PREFACE

In introducing this work, the first of its kind, to the students of the Avesta language, and others interested in the advancement of the knowledge of the Zoroastrian religion, a few words explanatory of the vast changes that have taken place within the last quarter of a century in the methods of the study of the Avesta language and literature, and of the scope and object of this Grammar, may not be out of place. So far back as 1862 the late Dr. Haug published "An outline of a Grammar of the Zend Language" in his "Essays on the Sacred Language, Writings and Religion of the Parsis;" and in the following year Ervad Sheheryarji Dádábhái Bharoocha issued in Gujarati "A brief outline of the Zend Grammar compared with Sanskrit." Since that time, *i.e.*, during the last twenty-eight years, changes have taken place in the study of the Avesta language, which may well be said to have revolutionised the study. This is clearly shown by the useful works published by Oriental scholars, both European and Parsee.

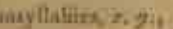
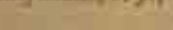
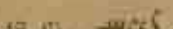
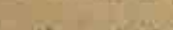
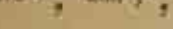
The want of a practical and systematic grammar of the Avesta language adapted to modern requirements, was long and keenly felt by the students of the language. Moreover, Zend and Pahlvi having been lately added by the Bombay University to the list of second languages at the M. A. examination, such a grammar has become more than ever necessary.

The systematic and regular study of Avesta and Pahlvi, based on the rules of philology and grammar, was first commenced in Bombay in 1861. Before that period the knowledge of Avesta was confined to a few Dasturs and Ervads, who mainly relied upon Pahlvi translations and extract, which, though good enough as far as they went, were not marked by any critical knowledge of the grammatical forms. The knowledge of grammar among the sacerdotal and other classes was necessarily scanty and imperfect. The Gujarati translations of the Vendidad, the Yasna and the Khordeh Avesta, published before 1861, were chiefly based on Pahlvi translations, and were, in consequence, incorrect, and in several respects obscure and unintelligible—the grammatical forms of words in the original being misunderstood. Such was up to 1861 the state of the Avesta study. Since then a great and long-wished-for change has taken place in the study of the works on the Zoroastrian religion. To Mr. K. R. Kama, an Oriental scholar of European repute, belongs the honour of having laid the foundation and zealously worked for the promotion and development of philological studies in Bombay. Having studied Avesta and

...t for some time under Professor Oppert of Paris and Dr. Spiegel of Erlangen, he not only vigorously continued his studies, but introduced the new system of religious instruction into Bombay, by opening in 1854 a class of young men from among the priestly order. The beginning was by no means encouraging, and the task generally was for some time beset with difficulties, which might well have discouraged a less enthusiastic and earnest pioneer. This class at first consisted of but three students, one of them being the writer. In course of time, the number increased to a dozen. This class of young students was maintained uninterruptedly for many years, during which time, Mr. Kama not only allowed them free access to his valuable Oriental library, but also liberally helped several of his poorer pupils with his purse. In 1863 the old system of teaching Avesta by means of Pahlvi was superseded by one based on the lines of philology and grammar, which obviously was a great improvement. Mr. Kama gave a further impetus to the propagation of religious knowledge by establishing a society for making researches into the Zoroastrian religion, by starting a periodical, called *Zartoshti Abâyds* (Zoroastrian Studies), by delivering learned lectures, and by publishing translations from distinguished German authors on the Zoroastrian religion. His *Zartoshti Nâmeh* (Life of Zoroaster), among other works published by him, stands pre-eminent, as an unique production of its kind, presenting, as it does, the life of the Prophet as chronicled in the sacred texts in a lucid and systematic way.

This grammar was at first written out in Gujarati, but agreeably to the suggestion and desire of some friends, it was turned into its present form, compared, as far as practicable, with Sanskrit. Avesta and Sanskrit on account of their close affinity have been justly called "sister languages." In order to facilitate the comparison of Avesta words with Sanskrit, the rules of the transmutation of letters of both these languages are given *vide* pp. 11-15; pp. 32 to 38. The inflected forms of nouns and verbs given in the paradigms are *not all actually* found in the Avesta texts. Some of these forms, both nominal and verbal, are given with the sole object of giving help and facility to the student. The Avesta literature being limited, the student meets with particular inflected forms of one noun, while the complement is supplied from some other noun of the same base. The same is the case in verbal forms. But the examples, both Avestaic and Gathaic, given below each paradigm are such as *are actually* met with in the sacred writings. "From the latter the student will find that, though the regular forms are numerous, the variations from the prescribed rules are not few." In order to give these forms it was necessary to go carefully through the whole Avesta texts of the late Professor Westergaard and the excellent revised texts of Dr. Karl F. Geldner hitherto published. From the latter, I have given many new grammatical forms,

due mainly to the oldest and best manuscript copies which the learned Doctor had been able to get. From the careful perusal of his great work it appears that this distinguished Orientalist has spared no pains to make his texts as useful as possible to the student of the Avesta literature.

The striking features of Dr. Geldner's texts as distinguished from those of Westergaard are (1) the free use of compound words, especially in nominal flexion, *e. g.*,  (Y. 29, 8);  (Y. 43, 14),  (Yt. 3, 9);  (Yt. 13, 18);  (Y. 43, 6),  (Y. 12, 3);  (Y. 62, 5), &c.; (2) the use of  —a modified form of —before (except in the word) and before vowels, *e. g.*,  ,  ,  ,  , &c.; (3) the distinction observed between  and ; viz., is used before , and before vowels.—Dr. Geldner considers the former a modified form of  (*h*), and the latter of (*hv*); (4) the particle  is mostly used for , and for (Yas.); (5) the occasional insertion of  in the body and at the end of words; *e. g.*,  (Yt. 6, 3);  (Yt. 6, 4);  (Yt. 1, 6);  (Khor. Nyâ., 2);  (Yt. 1, 14); (6) the insertion of  in most cases before as aptly required according to para. 54; *e. g.*,  ,  , &c.; (7) the occasional use of  for in the body of words; *e. g.*,  , , , &c.; (8) the occasional use of the terminal suffix in the ablative singular of bases ending in , , , ; *e. g.*,

* Exceptions.—Yas. 4, 19; Vsp. 21, 1; Y. 10, 11.

𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬥, 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬥𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬥𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬥𐬎, 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬙,

𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬙𐬌, &c. But the most striking feature, which a minute examination of the texts of Dr Geldner discloses, is the importance given by him, in several instances, in the body of the texts, to words which Westergaard has relegated to foot-notes; though, in many instances, quite new forms of words found in the oldest copies are met with.

In the preparation of this work, I have strictly followed the different readings of both these authorities. No rules have been given not sanctioned by the sacred texts. The notable features of the Gâthâ dialect, as distinguished from the Avesta writings, are given. As for its peculiar forms of nouns, pronouns and verbs, the student is referred to Chapters III., VII. and VIII., inflecting where necessary the different readings of Westergaard and Geldner. In the chapter on Syntax, it has been thought proper to cite the sacred texts wherever its rules are laid down; for further illustration to those rules, references are given.

In the preparation of this work, I have availed myself, among others, of the works of Westergaard, Geldner, Spiegel, Haug, Justi, Monier Williams, Bentey and Kielhorn.

In conclusion, I beg to offer my grateful thanks to the respected Trustees of the Sir Jamsetjee Jejeebhoy Translation Fund for their liberal support by subscribing for seventy-five copies of this work.

KAVASJI EDALJI KANGA.

Bombay, March 1891.

ABBREVIATIONS EMPLOYED IN THIS GRAMMAR.

Abl.	ablative case.
Acc.	accusative case.
Adj.	adjective.
Adv.	adverb.
Adv. comp.	adverbial compound.
Appos. determ. comp.	appositional determinative compound.
Atmane	Atmane-pada.
Attrib. comp.	attributive compound.
Av.	Avesta.
Cl.	class (*i. e.*, the class to which a verb belongs).
Comp.	compare.
Compara.	comparative degree.
Copul. comp.	copulative compound.
Darmes.	Professor Darmesteter.
Dat.	dative case.
Demonstrat.	demonstrative pronoun.
Desider.	desiderative verb.
Determ. comp.	determinative compound.
Du.	dual number.
Ed.	edition.
E. g.	(L. *exempli gratiâ*) for example.
Eng.	English.
Fem.	feminine.
Fr.	from.
Frag.	Fragments.
Gâth.	Gâthâ dialect.
Geld.	Dr. Karl F. Geldner.
Gen.	genitive case.
I. e.	(L. *id est*) that is.
Imperat.	imperative mood.
Imperf.	imperfect tense.
Inchn. base	inchoative base.
Instr.	instrumental case.
Intens.	intensive verb.
Interr.	interrogative pronoun.

Justi	Professor F. Justi.
Khor. Nyâ	Khorâdad Nyâish.
L., or Lat.	Latin.
Lit.	literally.
Loc.	locative case.
Mas.	masculine.
Mills	the Rev. Dr. L. H. Mills.
Neut.	neuter.
Nom.	nominative case.
Nyâ.	Nyâish.
Orig.	originally.
Paranmai.	Paranmaiŋuha.
Partic.	participle.
Pass.	passive.
Patronym.	patronymic.
Per.	perens.
Perf.	perfect tense.
Plu.	plural number.
Pos.	positive degree.
Pot., or Poten.	potential mood.
Pres.	present tense.
Pres. partic.	present participle.
Reduplic.	reduplicated form.
Relat.	relative pronoun.
Rt.	root.
Sans.	Sanskrit.
Sax.	Saxon.
Sing.	singular number.
Str. b.	strong base.
Subjunc.	subjunctive mood.
Subs.	substantive.
Super.	superlative degree.
Ved.	Vedic.
Vend.	Vendidad.
Visp.	Visperad.
Viz.	(Lat. *Videlicet*) namely.
Voc.	vocative case.
W. b.	weak base.
Westerg.	Professor N. L. Westergaard.
Y., or Yaç.	Yaçna.
Yt.	Yasht.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

CHAPTER I.

	Page
Introductory Remarks, § 1	1
Letters, §§ 2—3	1—3
Specimens of Reading, §§ 4—5	3—5
Vowels, §§ 6—25	5—20
Contact of final and initial homogeneous vowels, §§ 8—9	5—7
Contact of final and initial dissimilar vowels, §§ 10—12	7—11
Guṇa and Vriddhi, §§ 13—14	11—13
Insertion of 𐬬 and 𐬭 in the body of words, §§ 15—16	13—14
Transmutation of the Avesta vowels into Sanskrit, § 17	14—15
Rules regarding the uses of 𐬀, 𐬁, 𐬂, 𐬃, §§ 18—21	15—19
Changes of vowels, § 22	19
Insertion of euphonic vowels, § 23	19—20
Dropping of vowels, § 24	20
Lengthening and shortening of vowels, § 25	20
Consonants, §§ 26—61	21—41
Classification of consonants, § 26	21—23
Aspirating consonants, §§ 27—28	23—24
Contact of final and initial dentals, §§ 29—30	24
Changes of final consonants, §§ 31—46	25—27
Changes of penultimate 𐬌, 𐬍, 𐬎 and 𐬏 before final 𐬱, § 47	27—28
Changes of penultimate 𐬌, 𐬍, 𐬎, 𐬐, 𐬑, 𐬒 and 𐬓 before final 𐬴, § 48	28—29
Changes of 𐬨 before final 𐬴, 𐬙𐬴, 𐬚𐬴, 𐬛𐬴, 𐬜𐬴, 𐬝𐬴, §§ 49—50	29—30
Insertion of 𐬬 and 𐬭 before 𐬯 in the body of words, §§ 51—56	30—32
Transmutation of the Avesta consonants into Sanskrit and Persian, § 57	32—34
Insertion of redundant consonants in words, § 58	34—39

	Page
Dropping of consonants, § 59	39—40
Transposition of letters, § 60	40—41
Softening of consonants, § 61	41
Dropping of syllables, § 62	41

CHAPTER II.

On roots, and the formation of nominal bases, §§ 63—69	42—44
List of ordinary primary (or कृत्) suffixes, § 70	44—48
List of ordinary secondary (or तद्धित) suffixes, § 71.	49—51
Compound nominal bases, §§ 72—89	52—61

CHAPTER III.

Declensions of Nouns Substantive and Adjective, §§ 90—172	61—120
Table of case-terminations added to nominal bases, §§ 92—93	62—64
Declension of bases ending in अ, §§ 94—100	64—71
Declension of bases ending in आ, §§ 101—106	72—76
Declension of bases ending in इ, ई, §§ 107—116	76—84
Declension of bases ending in उ, ऊ, §§ 117—126.	84—91
Introductory remarks on bases ending in consonants, §§ 127—131	91—93
Declension of bases ending in ऋ, §§ 132—139	93—99
Declension of bases ending in ल्, व्, §§ 140—151	100—107
Declension of bases ending in अन्, अस्, §§ 152—159	107—111
Declension of bases ending in व्, §§ 160—169	111—117
Declension of ग्यौ and द्यौ, § 170	117—118
Declension of bases ending in इन्, इन्न्, § 171	118
Some notable inflected forms of nouns, § 172	118—120
Nouns having more than one base, § 173	120—121
Nouns used in more than one gender, § 174	121—122

CHAPTER IV.

Gender, § 175	122
Rules for the formation of the feminine, §§ 176—180	122—124

Page

CHAPTER V.

Classifications of adjectives, §§ 181—183 ..... 124—128
Comparison of adjectives, §§ 184—193 ..... 125—129
List of comparatives and superlatives, §§ 194—197. 130—133

CHAPTER VI.—NUMERALS.

Cardinals, §§ 198—205 ..... 133—136
Ordinals, § 206 137
Multiplicatives and Fractionals, §§ 207—209 138

CHAPTER VII.

Pronouns, Pronominal Adjectives, and their Declension, §§ 210—256 ..... 139—161
Personal pronouns, §§ 210—214 ..... 139—142
Demonstrative pronouns, §§ 215—224 ..... 143—147
Relative pronouns, §§ 225—227 ..... 147—150
Interrogative pronouns, §§ 228—230 ..... 150—151
Indefinite pronouns, §§ 231—232 ..... 151—152
Reflexive pronouns, §§ 233—235 ..... 152—153
Possessive pronouns, §§ 236—239 ..... 153—156
Pronominal adjectives, §§ 240—256 ..... 156—161

CHAPTER VIII.—THE VERB.

Introductory remarks on verbs, the Parasmaipada and the Atmanepada, §§ 257—261 ..... 161—162
Conjugational Tenses and Moods, §§ 262—469 ..... 162—234
Formation of the special base in the ten classes, §§ 263—276 ..... 163—168
List of reduplicated forms of roots, §§ 277—279. 168—173
Terminations of Conjugational Tenses and Moods, §§ 280—287 ..... 173—177
Paradigms of the First Conjugation, §§ 289—310. 178—187
Paradigms of the Second Conjugation, §§ 311—339 ..... 187—196
Paradigms of the Third Conjugation, §§ 340—358. 196—201
Paradigms of the Fourth Conjugation, §§ 359—379. 201—207
Paradigms of the Fifth Conjugation, §§ 380—395. 207—211
Paradigms of the Sixth Conjugation, §§ 396—415. 211—215
Seventh Conjugation, §§ 416—417 215
Paradigms of the Eighth Conjugation, §§ 418—428. 218—220
Paradigms of the Ninth Conjugation, §§ 429—444. 221—224
Paradigms of the Tenth Conjugation, §§ 445—463. 224—230
Verbs that are conjugated in the Parasmai., § 464. 230
Verbs that are conjugated in the Atmane., § 465. 230
Verbs that are conjugated both in the Parasmai. and the Atmane., § 466 231
Roots that form their special base in two or more ways, § 467 ..... 231—233

	Page
The same root, when it has different significations, belongs to different classes, § 468	230
Roots used transitively as well as intransitively, § 469	230—234
NON-CONJUGATIONAL TENSES AND MOODS, §§ 470—501	234—247
The Future Tense, §§ 471—481	234—237
The Perfect, §§ 482—488	237—241
The Aorist, §§ 489—499	241—244
The Precative or Benedictive, §§ 500—501	244—246
DERIVATIVE VERBS, §§ 502—523	246—251
Frequentative or Intensive Verbs, §§ 505—509	247—247
Desiderative Verbs, §§ 510—513	247—249
Denominatives or Nominal Verbs, §§ 514—518	248—250
Causal Verbs, §§ 519—523	250—251
Inchoative Verbs, § 524	251—252
PASSIVE VOICE, §§ 525—534	252—255
Conjugational Tenses and Moods in the Passive Voice, §§ 525—530	252—253
Non-Conjugational Tenses and Moods in the Passive Voice, §§ 531—534	254—255
Compound Verbs, § 535	256—256
PARTICIPLES—FORMATION OF THEIR BASES, §§ 536—561	256—266
Present Participle—Parasmaipada, §§ 538—540	256—258
Present Participle—Atmanepada, §§ 541—545	258—260
Present Participle—Passive, § 546	260
Future Participle—Parasmai and Atmane, § 547	260—261
Perfect Participle—Parasmaipada, § 548	261—262
Perfect Participle—Atmanepada, § 549	262
Past Participle—Passive, §§ 550—562	262—266
Past Participle—Active, § 563	266
The Gerund, § 564	266—267
Verbal Adjectives, § 565	267—268
The Infinitive, §§ 568—569	268—269
CHAPTER IX—Indeclinables §§ 570—580	269—278
Adverbs, § 571	269
Prepositions, § 572	274—275
Conjunctions, § 579	276—278
Interjections, § 580	278
PARTICLES, §§ 581—582	278—284
CHAPTER X.	
Notable features of the Vedic dialect, §§ 583—584	284—288
CHAPTER XI—Syntax, §§ 585—652	289—313

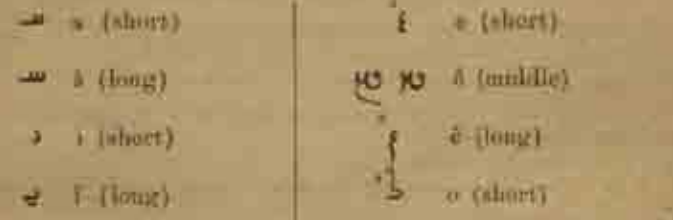
AVESTA GRAMMAR.

1. Avesta, the ancient and sacred language of the Parsees, bears a close affinity to Sanskrit, the classical and learned mother-tongue of the Hindoos. It is a branch of the great Aryan stock of languages, called by philologists Indo-European. Comparative Philology has proved beyond doubt that it is a genuine sister of Sanskrit.

Letters.

2. The Avesta alphabet consists of 47 letters: 13 vowels and 34 consonants. They are, like Persian, written from right to left.

Vowels.



[1] Corresponding with the Sanskrit ऋ r.
[2] Pronounced like *a* in the word *fed*.
[3] Pronounced like *a* in the word *mate*.
[4] Sounded like *o* in the word *for*.
[5] Sounded like *o* in the word *fore*.
[6] Pronounced like *ă* with a slight tinge of a nasal sound, like the French *an* in *bonheur*, *langue*, *avers*, &c.

Consonants.

𐬐 k	𐬛 hh
𐬑 kh	𐬀, 𐬁 n
𐬒, 𐬓 g	𐬂 p
𐬔 g	𐬃 ph
𐬕 gh	𐬄 b
𐬖 ch	𐬅 m
𐬗 j	𐬆, 𐬇 y
𐬘 j	𐬉 r
𐬙 t	𐬊, 𐬋 v
𐬚 th	𐬌 w
𐬛 d	𐬍 ç (s)

[1] Corresponding to Persian خ (in خواندن, خویش, خواب).

Professor Geldner, in his Avesta Texts, uses 𐬓 before 𐬇, and 𐬓 before vowels. He considers the former a modification of 𐬓 h, and the latter of 𐬌𐬎 hv.

[2] 𐬞, 𐬟—Of the two, 𐬟 is a little soft, between a surd and a sonant.

[3] 𐬠—This letter never occurs at the beginning or end of a word; neither between two vowels.

[4] 𐬆, 𐬇—𐬆 is used at the beginning and 𐬇 in the body of a word. 𐬈 is an obsolete form of 𐬆, generally seen in old copies. Exceptions:—𐬆𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀 Yasna 35, 2; 𐬆𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀 (see Westergaard's Zend-Avesta) Yasht 1, 19.

[5] 𐬊, 𐬋—𐬊 is used at the beginning and 𐬋 in the body of a word. Exceptions:—𐬋𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬋𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬀, &c.

[6] Pronounced like the Sanskrit श, or ś in the word *silly*, or like s in *sun*.

[1] 𐬯 s	𐬲 h
[2] 𐬰, 𐬱 sh	[3] 𐬳, 𐬴 v
𐬵 z	[4] 𐬶 hm
[5] 𐬷 zh	

3. It should be noted that the Avesta characters, unlike Sanskrit, Pehlvi and Persian, are always written in their full forms without being joined with one another, except 𐬙𐬀, 𐬚𐬀, 𐬛𐬀, and 𐬜𐬀, which are optionally written conjointly; as, 𐬙𐬀, 𐬚𐬀, 𐬛𐬀 and 𐬜𐬀.

---

[1] Sounded like the Sanskrit स, or s in the word sure. 𐬚𐬀 and 𐬛𐬀 may optionally be written conjointly:—𐬚𐬀 and 𐬛𐬀; *e.g.*, 𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀, 𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀, 𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀.

[2] 𐬰—Pronounced like the Sanskrit ष, or sh in the word *compassion*. 𐬱 is a modified form of 𐬰, and, according to Dr. Geldner, is used before 𐬌𐬌 only, *e.g.*, 𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀𐬌𐬱𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬚𐬀𐬌𐬛𐬀.

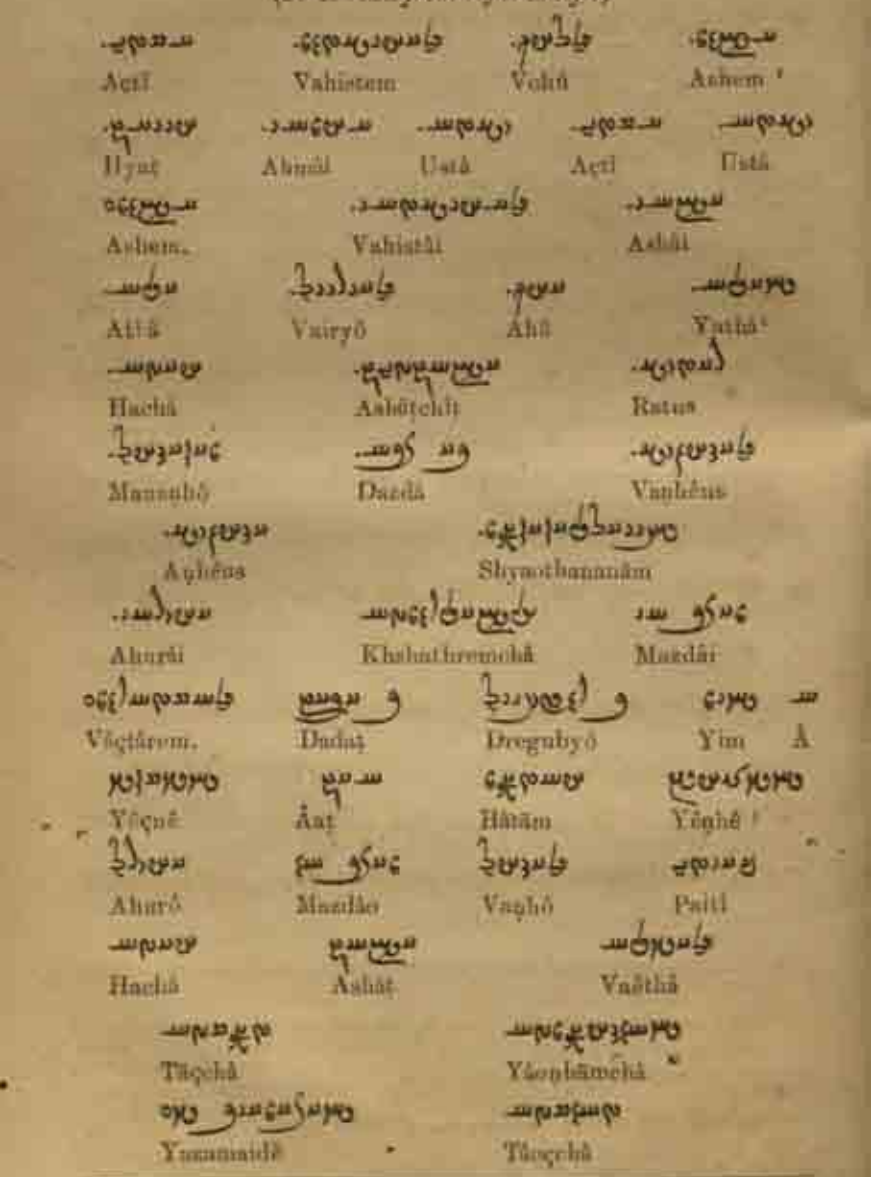
[3] Pronounced like z in the English word *azure*, or the Per. ژ.

[4] 𐬳, 𐬴—Sounded like *ng* in the word *sing*. Their uses will be explained hereafter.

[5] 𐬷—This conjunct letter, though rarely used, is considered by Prof. Lepsius an aspirate of 𐬟, on the supposition that soft letters in their aspirate forms have generally a curved stroke to the right below them; as, 𐬞, 𐬠; and hard ones have the same at the top; as, 𐬀, 𐬁, 𐬂. According to this theory 𐬷 ought to be pronounced zh, and not hm, as is now done.

4 Specimens of Reading.

(To be read from right to left.)



[1] The transliterated form should be read from left to right, each word.

5. An Avesta word may begin with any letter, except 𐬌, 𐬍, 𐬎, 𐬏, 𐬐, 𐬑, 𐬒, 𐬓. There are no words beginning with 𐬔, 𐬕, except 𐬔𐬀, 𐬔𐬁, 𐬔𐬀𐬐, 𐬔𐬁𐬐. A complete word may end in any vowel, except 𐬔, 𐬀𐬉 (𐬍), or in one of the consonants 𐬉, 𐬊, 𐬋, 𐬌, 𐬍, 𐬎, 𐬏. Words do not end in more than two consonants.

Vowels.[1]

6. Of the 13 vowels already mentioned, 𐬀, 𐬁, 𐬂, 𐬀𐬉, 𐬉, 𐬔 are short; and 𐬃, 𐬄, 𐬅, 𐬆, 𐬇, 𐬕 are long. 𐬌 is pronounced between 𐬉 and 𐬇; neither too short nor too long. It is sometimes called the 𐬌 of guṇa, since it is a modification of 𐬂 or 𐬅 after 𐬃.

Besides these, there are 18 conjunct vowels[2],—viz., 𐬃𐬀, 𐬌𐬃, 𐬃𐬁, 𐬔𐬃, 𐬃𐬂, 𐬃𐬃, [3]𐬇𐬃, 𐬃𐬄, 𐬆𐬀, 𐬆𐬁, 𐬆𐬂, 𐬆𐬃, 𐬆𐬄, 𐬆𐬅, 𐬆𐬇, 𐬆𐬉, 𐬆𐬊, 𐬆𐬋.

7. 𐬂 or 𐬌, 𐬅 or 𐬆 𐬔, and 𐬀𐬉, when followed by a heterogeneous vowel, are changed to 𐬯, 𐬰 and 𐬱, respectively, called semi-vowels.

RULES OF EUPHONY (*Sandhi*).

Contact of Final and Initial Homogeneous Vowels.

8. Homogeneous vowels, in Sanskrit and in Avesta (except 𐬂+𐬂),

---

[1] All vowels are considered to be sonant or soft letters.

[2] There are, in Avesta, strictly speaking, no diphthongs (*i.e.*, the union of two vowels in one sound) as we have in Sanskrit, *viz.*, ए, ऐ, ओ, औ; those are represented by 𐬌𐬃, 𐬂𐬃, 𐬔𐬃, 𐬅𐬃, respectively.

[3] Mark, that 𐬇𐬃 is pronounced *ko*, and not *ka*.

concurring at the end and the beginning either of separate words or parts of a compound, combine into one long homogeneous vowel, whether they be both short or both long, or one be long and the other short.[1] *E.g.*

अ + अ = आ.[2] अ + आ = आ; as, अत्र कः + अत्र आगच्छति = अत्र काऽऽगच्छति;[3] अत्र + अत्र + एव = अत्रात्रैव. अच + अन्ति = अचान्ति.

आ + अ = आ. आ + आ = आ; *e.g.*, महा + अश्वारोहः = महाऽश्वारोहः; गच्छ + आगच्छ = गच्छागच्छ. गता + आसीत् = गतासीत्.

इ + अ = इ; as, हरि + अवदत् = हरिरवदत्; हरि + अत्र एहि = हरिरत्र एहि

अ + इ = ए; अ + आ = आ; as, महा + इन्द्रः = महेन्द्रः; अत्र + एव = अत्रैव; + महा = अत्रैवाहम्; उप + अनय = उपानय. अच + आसीत् = अचासीत्.

अ + उ = ओ[4] आ + अ = आ; as, सर्व + औषधम् = सर्वौषधम्; पुरा + उ = पुरो; सर्व + औषधि = सर्वौषधि. वधा + अस्ति = वधास्ति.

---

[1] Vide Professor Benfey's Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 16.

[2] The suffix हिल्, after being coalesced with the preceding अ or आ inserts ह after अ; as, हिल् + अरण्यम् = हिलहरण्यम्; हिल् + अगच्छत् = हिलहागच्छत्; + अगच्छत् हिल् = हिलहागच्छत्

[3] Exceptions :—अतिरात्रः (from अति + रात्र); अतीतः (= अति + इतः)

[4] Notice अत्रोभयम्, अत्रोभौ, अत्रोभाभ्याम्, अत्रोभयोः, अत्रोभाभ्याम्, &c. (ablative singular of some pronominal bases ending in अ)

अ+अ=आ; इ+इ=ई; *e.g.*, [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] = originally, [illegible] + [illegible] (see [illegible] Vendidad 8, 19, 20).

अस्ति + इह = अस्तीह. इति + इदम् = इतीदम्.

ई + ई = ई. ई + ई = ई; *e.g.*, [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]

ई + अ = ए. इ + ई = ई; as, [illegible] + [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]. अपि + ईक्षते = अपीक्षते.

अ + ई = ए. ई + इ = ई; as, नदी + इह = नदीह.

Similarly, अ + उ = ओ. उ + उ = ऊ; as, [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible] स्वादु + उत = स्वादूत; साधु + ऊर्जम् = साधूर्जम्.

ओ + ओ = ओ. ऊ + ऊ = ऊ.

ओ + उ = ओ. ऊ + ऊ = ऊ साधू + ऊतू = साधूतू.

उ + ओ = ओ. ऊ + ऊ = ऊ.

9. There is no separate vowel-sign for the lengthened form of ऌ, corresponding to the Sanskrit ॠ, but, in several instances, the same vowel (ऌ) is substituted for ॠ; as, ऌ[illegible] = पॄ to fill; ऌ[illegible] = तॄ to tear; ऌ[illegible] = गॄ to grow old; ऌ[illegible] = मॄ to praise. In Sanskrit ऋ + ऋ = ॠ; *e.g.*, कर्तृ + ऋजु = कर्तॄजु.

Contact of Final and Initial Dissimilar Vowels.

10. When a word or its component part ends in अ, and the following begins with इ, उ, or ऌ, अ is changed to ए, आ to ऐ, and ई to ऐ. But in Sanskrit any two vowels coalesce into one, except अ + ऋ, which is changed to अर्. *e.g.*

---

[1] Exceptions:—[illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible] (originally, [illegible] + [illegible])

ઽ + ા = ૐ.[1] અ + ૠ = ૠ; as, ગજ + ા = ગજા; + ાય = ગયા; (ાય) + ાધિ = (ાય) ૐ + ધિ; - ગાયધિ (ાય) + = (ાય) ૐ ગાયધિ. નવ + દ્વારા = નવદ્વારા.

ૂ + ા = ૐ; ે (before the final ૂ or ૅ) અ + ૠ = ૠ. e.g., ૂૂ + ા = ૂે; ૂૂ + ાય = ૂેય. વરમ + ૈશ્વર = વરમેશ્વર.

ઽ + ા = ૈ. અ + ૠ = ાે; as, ગજેન્દ્ર + ગજેન્દ્ર = ગજેન્દ્રૈગજેન્દ્ર; ગજેન્દ્ર + ા = ગજેન્દ્રૈ. દૃષ્ટ + વત = દૃષ્ટાન.

ૃ + ા = ૈ. અ + ક = ાે.

ૈ + ા = ૈ. અ + ક or અ + ક = ાર; e. g., દશ + ધનુ = દશૈ:

11. When a word or its component part ends in ા, and the following begins with ઽ–ૂ–ૐ, ઽ–ૃ–ૈ or ૈ, ઽ–ૂ–ૐ is changed to ઽ, ઽ–ૃ–ૈ to ઽ, and ૈ to ૈ. In Sanskrit the changes are as follow:—

ઽ + ા = ઽા અ + ૠ = ૠ; as, લોક + ા = લોકા; ઉત્ ગ + ા = ઉદ્ ગા; ૐૐ + ા = ૐૐા. નવ + દ્વારા = નવદ્વારા.

---

[1] *Note.*—Before ૐ, ૐ or ૈ, ૐા is changed to ે; as, ગજેન્દ્ર + ગજેન્દ્ર = ગજેન્દ્રેગજેન્દ્ર; ગજેન્દ્ર + ા = ગજેન્દ્રે

[2] Sometimes, though seldom, ઽ + ા is changed to ે; e.g., ા ે Vispered 20, 2; 24, 1; also ે (originally, ા + ે lying utterance).

[3] *Note.*—The coalescence of ૐા + ા, ૐ + ા, or ૐા + ા is also ા; Sans. અ + ૠ or ૈ = ૠ; as, ૐા + ા = ૐા; ૐા + ા = ૐા; ૐા + ા = ૐા;

𐬀 + 𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀. आ + इ = ए; e. g., यथा + इमे = यथेमे.

𐬀 + 𐬉 = 𐬀𐬉. आ + उ = ओ; e. g., सा + उवाच = सोवाच.

𐬀 + 𐬋 = 𐬀𐬋. आ + ऋ = ओ; e. g., यथा + ऋतुः = यथोतुः.

𐬁 + 𐬀 = 𐬁𐬀. आ + ए or आ + ऐ = अर; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬁𐬌𐬁𐬎 = orig., 𐬀𐬌𐬁 + 𐬁𐬀𐬎 = 𐬀𐬌𐬁 + 𐬁𐬀𐬎; rt. 𐬁 + 𐬀𐬎; see 𐬀𐬌𐬁𐬌𐬁𐬎 Geld. Yt. 13, 25. यथा + ऐषि = यथर्षि.

12. In Avesta, as in Sanskrit, when a word or the first part of a compound ends in 𐬀–𐬌–𐬆 अ इ, 𐬀–𐬍–𐬆 अ उ, or 𐬁 ए ऐ, and the following begins with a heterogeneous vowel, 𐬀–𐬌–𐬆 अ इ is changed to 𐬀𐬀 य, 𐬀–𐬍–𐬆 अ उ to 𐬀𐬉 व, and 𐬁 ए ऐ to 𐬁𐬀 र; e.g.,

𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀; 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 इति + अत्र = इत्यत्र.

𐬀𐬀𐬉 + 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬉 = 𐬀𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬉; इति + आह = इत्याह.

𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀. 𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀𐬁𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬁𐬀; 𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀𐬁𐬁 = 𐬀𐬀𐬁𐬁; 𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀.

[1] *Note.*—The union of 𐬀𐬉 + 𐬉, 𐬀𐬉 + 𐬀𐬉 or 𐬀 + 𐬀𐬉 is also 𐬀𐬉; In Sans. अ + ओ or औ = औ.

[2] *Note.*—𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀 is coalesced to 𐬀𐬀; so, 𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀 to 𐬀𐬀; as, 𐬁𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 + 𐬁 = 𐬁𐬀𐬀𐬀; 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀; + 𐬀𐬀𐬁𐬁 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬁𐬁 (Geld. Yt. 16, 1.) 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 Geld., 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 + 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 = 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 Geld.

[3] Mark 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 Geld. (well-strained) Yt. 5, 8. 63; but, 𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀 Westerg.

similarly,

similarly,

Exception:—

Exception:— Yt. 5, 102, well-laid (Darmes.)

(originally, ; an euphonic change of to)

[illegible]

Guṇa and Vṛiddhi.

13. When अ, इ, उ, ऋ and ऌ are changed to अ, अय्, अव् and अर्, respectively, the modification is called the guṇa of the vowel. When अ, इ, उ, ऋ and ऌ are changed to आ, ऐ, औ and आर्; respectively, the variation is termed the vṛiddhi of that vowel. In other words, the guṇa is effected by placing अ immediately before the aforesaid vowels (except अ), and vṛiddhi by आ, and then coalescing the two according to the rules of *Sandhi* mentioned above. The relation of the guṇa and vṛiddhi vowels and syllables to the simple vowels will appear from the following table:—

Simple Vowel	अ	इ ई	उ ऊ	ऌ ॠ
Guṇa	अ	अय् ए	अव् ओ	अर् अर्
Vṛiddhi	आ	ऐ	औ	आर् आर्

14. Moreover, it should be remembered, that to *guṇate* or to *vṛiddhi* a root or any component part of a compound is to change its vowel only to the guṇa or vṛiddhi equivalent as explained before, and to keep the consonants intact; *e. g.*, the guṇa equivalent of ꠇꠣꠞ is ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠞ; of ꠅꠛ, ꠅꠇꠛ; of ꠎꠣ, ꠇꠣꠎꠣ; of ꠇꠣꠝꠣ, ꠇꠣꠝꠇꠣ; of ꠔꠤꠞ, ꠔꠇꠞ; of ꠑꠤꠟ, ꠇꠟ; of ꠑꠤꠑꠤ, ꠇꠑꠤ, &c.

Note.—The guṇa substitute for ꠑꠤ before a consonant inserts, in several instances, ꠑ after it, if the latter is followed by a vowel; *e. g.*, ꠔꠣꠑꠤꠟ (rt. ꠣꠑꠤ); ꠘꠣꠇꠑꠤꠎꠣꠞ (rt. ꠑꠤꠎ); ꠇꠣꠑꠤꠇꠣꠞ (rt. ꠅꠑꠤꠛ); ꠑꠤꠎꠣꠞ (rt. ꠎꠣꠞ)

The *vṛiddhi* equivalent of ꠇꠣꠝ is ꠇꠣꠝꠣ; of ꠑꠤ, ꠑꠤꠇ; of ꠣ, ꠇꠣ; of ꠑꠤꠞ, ꠑꠤꠇꠞ; of ꠑꠤꠟ, ꠑꠤꠇꠟ; of ꠑꠤꠑꠤ, ꠑꠤꠇꠑꠤ, &c.

Insertion of ꠣ and ꠤ in the body of words.

15. When ꠝ, ꠞ, ꠛ, ꠜ, ꠟ, ꠠ, ꠡ, ꠢ or ꠤꠇ is preceded by any vowel, except ꠣ or ꠤ, and followed by ꠣ, ꠤ, ꠇ or ꠤꠣ, a redundant ꠣ is inserted between the consonant and its preceding vowel;[1] as, ꠔꠣꠑꠤꠣꠟ,[2] Sans. वर्षति; ꠇꠣꠝꠣꠑꠤꠣꠇꠣꠝ,[3] Sans. वक्षसे;

---

[1] *Note.*—ꠔꠤꠟ, ꠇꠤꠟ and ꠑꠤꠟ do not insert ꠣ before them, when preceded by any vowel, except ꠇ; as, ꠔꠤꠟꠣꠎꠇꠞꠣꠝ, ꠇꠤꠟꠑꠤꠢ, ꠔꠤꠟꠣꠝ, ꠑꠤꠟꠣꠝꠇꠣꠞ, ꠑꠤꠟꠣꠎꠇꠣ; but, ꠔꠤꠟ ꠔꠤꠟꠣꠑꠤꠔꠣꠝ, ꠇꠤꠟꠑꠤꠟꠣꠑꠤꠔꠣꠝ, ꠑꠤꠟꠣꠑꠤꠔꠣꠝꠇꠣ.

[2] Exceptions.— ꠝꠇꠔꠤꠔꠣꠝꠇꠣꠝ, ꠇꠣꠝꠣꠞ ... ꠎꠤꠟ (also, ꠇꠣꠝꠣꠞ); ꠇꠣꠝꠇꠣꠔꠣꠎ, ꠇꠣꠑꠣꠔꠣꠎꠤꠟ (Yt. II, 16); also, ꠇꠣꠑꠣꠔꠣꠎꠤꠟ Virp. I, 7; (from ꠎꠤꠟ ꠝꠔꠣꠎꠤꠟ)

[1][illegible], Sans. [illegible]; [2][illegible], Sans. [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]=[illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]

[illegible], followed by [illegible], or preceded by [illegible], [illegible], optionally inserts [illegible] before it; as, [illegible], [illegible] (also, [illegible]); [illegible] (also, [illegible] See Visp. 11, 6.) [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible], but, [illegible] Wester. Yaç. 62, 3; [illegible] Geld. Visp. 20, 2; [illegible] Geld. Yaç. 62, 5.

In several instances, [illegible] and [illegible] insert a redundant [illegible] before them; as [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] [illegible]; but, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

16. [illegible], preceded by any vowel, except [illegible], and followed by [illegible], [illegible] or [illegible], inserts a redundant [illegible] before it; as, [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible][3]

---

[1] Mark the redundant [illegible] at the beginning in [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

[2] *Notice* the redundant [illegible] at the beginning in [illegible], [illegible]

[3] This is an example in which [illegible] and [illegible] are inserted.

☞ It should be remembered that the redundant ◌ and ◌ do not coalesce, according to the rules of *Sandhi*, with the preceding vowel, as will be seen from the examples already given.

Transmutation of the Avesta Vowels into Sanskrit.

17. 𐬀=अ; as, 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬭=अन्तर the interior; 𐬀𐬵𐬌=कन्या a virgin; 𐬀𐬎𐬎=यव barley.

𐬁=आ; as, 𐬁𐬎𐬁𐬎=गाथा a hymn; 𐬁𐬙𐬁𐬌=पात protected.

𐬂=इ; as, 𐬂𐬙𐬂=इति wish; 𐬂𐬎𐬂=इषु an arrow.

𐬃=ई; as, 𐬁𐬙𐬃𐬌=पीत beloved; 𐬁𐬌𐬃𐬭=श्रीर beautiful.

𐬄=उ; as, 𐬄𐬎𐬁=पशु cattle, a beast; 𐬅𐬄𐬵=दार wood.

𐬆=ऊ; as, 𐬉𐬆𐬌=भूमि the earth, land; 𐬁𐬆𐬭=शूल a weapon.

𐬇=ऋ; as, 𐬁𐬇𐬇=ऋजु straight, true. 𐬁𐬙𐬇𐬌=पृत borne.

𐬈=ॠ; as, 𐬇𐬇𐬵=कृ to tear; 𐬇𐬇𐬁=पृ to fill; 𐬇𐬇𐬴=मृ.

𐬉, 𐬊=ए; as, 𐬉𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌=रेवन्त् wealthy; 𐬁𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬌 भेषज्य a medicine; 𐬁𐬀𐬊𐬎=भेष्य place; 𐬉𐬵𐬎𐬌=भरेत्.

Note.—Observe that before the finals 𐬙, 𐬎 and the suffix 𐬁𐬀, 𐬎𐬀 is changed to 𐬊; as, 𐬉𐬵𐬎𐬁, 𐬎𐬵𐬙𐬀, 𐬁𐬀𐬊𐬎𐬌. In several instances, the final 𐬎𐬀 is changed to 𐬊; as, 𐬊𐬎, 𐬊𐬎𐬎, 𐬊𐬎𐬎𐬆𐬌. Frequently, in the Gâthâ dialect, in nominal bases ending in 𐬎, 𐬊 is substituted for 𐬎𐬀 before the case-terminations 𐬌𐬌, 𐬎𐬌; as, 𐬌𐬌𐬵𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬌𐬵𐬎𐬌, 𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬙𐬁𐬌, 𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬁𐬌, &c.

𐬌𐬌=ए, as, 𐬌𐬌𐬁𐬎𐬁𐬌=गाथासे; 𐬌𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬌=गारीकासे.

ꠇꠥ, ꠇꠤ = নী; as, ꠇꠥꠞꠣꠇꠥ = নীবি the hips and loins; ꠇꠥꠞꠣꠇꠥ = নীৰ intellect; ꠇꠥꠞꠣꠇꠥ = নীঃ of a bull; ꠇꠥꠞꠣꠇꠥ = নষীঃ of cattle, ꠇꠥ = নী, as, ꠇꠥꠞꠣ = নষী, masc. he; fem. she.

Rules regarding the uses of ꠣ, ꠤ, ꠥ, ꠦ.

18. ꠣ—(1) It is used between two consonants as a mere vehicle for facilitating the pronunciation, *i.e.*, for rendering the utterance of two consonants easy; as, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ = Sans. অর্ধ half; ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ = Sans. কর্ণ the ear, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠞ = Sans. তপ্ত heat.

(2).—Words ending in ꠇ affix a final ꠣ after them; as, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ, ꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ (orig., ꠇꠥ.....).

(3).—Sometimes, it is used as a negative prefix instead of ꠇ to adjectives beginning with ꠇ; as, ꠇ ꠇꠣꠇꠣꠇ not working, sluggish (orig., ꠇ ꠇꠣꠇꠣꠇ + ꠇ); ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ not knowing (orig., ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ + ꠇ)

(4).—A final ꠇ or ꠇ always changes its preceding ꠇ to ꠣ; as, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ (orig., ꠇ + ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ); ꠇꠣꠇ (orig., ꠇ + ꠇꠣꠇ), &c.

(5).—In several instances, especially before the terminations ꠇꠣꠇ and ꠇꠣꠇ, a medial ꠇ is changed to ꠣ; as, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ

---

[1] The final ꠇ usually changes ꠇꠥ to ꠇꠤ; as, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣꠇ, &c. (orig., ꠇꠥ...)

[2] Sometimes, though rarely, ꠇ is inserted instead of ꠣ; as, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ; ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ (also, ꠇꠣꠞꠣꠇꠣ).

(6).—The final 𐬨 of the first member of a compound inserts ɛ after it, if the second member be 𐬵𐬀𐬰𐬌, 𐬎𐬀𐬰𐬌 or 𐬀𐬵𐬌; e.g., 𐬀𐬵𐬌-ɛ𐬨𐬎𐬀 (orig., 𐬀𐬵𐬌+𐬨𐬎𐬀); 𐬎𐬀𐬰𐬌-ɛ𐬨𐬎 (orig., +𐬨𐬎 𐬎𐬀𐬰𐬌); 𐬵𐬀𐬰𐬌-ɛ𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬌-ɛ𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌 (also, 𐬀𐬵𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌 see Y. 33, 5.)

19. ɛ—This long vowel is freely and frequently used in the Gâthâ dialect as a substitute for 𐬀, ɛ, 𐬌, 𐬋, 𐬆 of the Avesta writings; hence, it is commonly called the Gâthâ ɛ.

☞ It should be noted that the first five uses of this vowel given below are purely applicable to the Gâthâ literature only, as distinguished from the Avesta writings.

(1).—Words ending in 𐬌 affix a final ɛ after them; as, 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬨 =Av. 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬨; 𐬉𐬀𐬨 𐬴𐬀𐬌=Av. 𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬴𐬌, &c.

(2).—An initial 𐬀, followed by 𐬌, 𐬎, 𐬯 or 𐬋, is, in several instances, changed to ɛ; as, 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬋𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌ɛ=Av. 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬋𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬨; 𐬈𐬀𐬯𐬯𐬀𐬎ɛ=Av. 𐬈𐬀𐬯𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬨; 𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬯𐬯ɛ=Av. 𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬯𐬯𐬨; 𐬀𐬎𐬋ɛ=𐬀𐬎𐬋𐬨

(3).—A final 𐬌 or 𐬎 occasionally alters its preceding 𐬀 to ɛ; as, 𐬵𐬉𐬀𐬌𐬨, 𐬵𐬉𐬀𐬌𐬉𐬀𐬨; 𐬎ɛ𐬌, 𐬎ɛ𐬌𐬀𐬨; 𐬎ɛ𐬎, 𐬎ɛ𐬌𐬀𐬎, &c.

(4.)—Monosyllabics ending in 𐬆 in Avesta substitute ɛ for 𐬆; as, 𐬉ɛ, 𐬉ɛ𐬨, 𐬉ɛ𐬀𐬨, 𐬉ɛ𐬨 for 𐬉𐬆, 𐬉𐬆𐬨, 𐬉𐬆𐬀𐬨, 𐬉𐬆𐬨, respectively.

(5.)—Sometimes, though rarely, the medials 𐬀, 𐬀, 𐬋 and 𐬀𐬨 are changed to ɛ; as, 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬨=orig., 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬨; 𐬵𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬆𐬉𐬀𐬨ɛ=orig., 𐬵𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬆𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬨; 𐬀𐬨ɛ 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬆𐬨=orig., 𐬀𐬨 𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬆𐬨; 𐬉ɛ𐬀𐬨=orig., 𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬀; 𐬆𐬉ɛ𐬀𐬨=orig., 𐬆𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬀; 𐬋𐬉ɛ𐬌=orig., 𐬋𐬉𐬀𐬌; 𐬋𐬉ɛ𐬀𐬨=orig., 𐬋𐬉𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨

(6).—The case-terminations ཀྱི་ and ཀྱིས་ always substitute ྃ for the preceding ཨཾ (ཾ); as, ཀུན་ཏུའང་ (originally, ཀུན་ + ཏུ་ + ཡང་); དེར་ཀཱལཱདིས་ (orig., དེར་ + ཀཱལཱདིས་), &c.

(7).—Final ཨཾ is euphonically changed to ཨཱྃ, except when followed by the enclitic particle ནམ་ or དེས་; as, ཁམས་ཀྱི་, ཀཱལཱྃ, but, ཁམས་ཀྱི་ནམ་; ཀཱལཱདིས་ནམ་ཡང་; ཀཱལཱྃ, but ཁམས་ཀྱི་ནམ་; ཀཱལཱྃ, ཀཱལཱདིས་, ཁམས་ཀྱི་ ཀཱལཱདིས་, but, ཁམས་ཀྱི་ནམ་ཀཱལཱདིས་ནམ་.

20. ྃ—(1). Final ཾ is always changed to ྃ, except when followed by the enclitic particle ནམ་ or དེས་; as, ཀཱལཱདིས་ཀྱིས་ (orig., ཀཱལཱདིས་ཀྱིས་); ཀིཾཏུ (orig., ཀིཾཏུ); but, ཀཱལཱདིས་ཀྱིས་ནམ་, ཀཱལཱདིས་ཀྱིས་ཏུ་ནམ་, ཀཱལཱདིས་ནམ་, ཀཱལཱདིས་ཏུ་ནམ་.

(2).—Initial ཀ་, ཅ་ or ཏ་, when followed by a syllable containing ེ, ོ or ཻ, changes its ཾ to ྃ; as, ཀིཾཏུ (orig., ཀཾཏུ); similarly, ཀིཾཅིད་, ཀིཾཏེད་, Sans. ཀཾ; ཀིཾཏུ་, ཀིཾཅིད་, Sans. ཀཾ; ཀིཾཏོ་, ཀིཾཅིད་.

(3).—A medial ཾ or ཾ is occasionally changed to ྃ in the Tibetan; as, ཀིཾཏཱཔཱདཾ (orig., ཀཾཏཱཔཱདཾ); ཀཱཡཱཀིཾཅིད་ (orig., ཀཱཡཱཀཾཅིད་); ཀཱཡཱཀིཾཅི (orig., ཀཱཡཱཀཾཅི).

(4).—Final ཨཾ (or ཨཱྃ) changes, in most cases, the preceding

---

[1] Sometimes, a medial ཾ is also changed to ྃ; as, ཀིཾཏཱཔཱདཾ (orig., ཀཾཏཱཔཱདཾ); ཀཱཡཱཀིཾཅིད་ (cf. ཀཱཡཱཀཾཅིད་).

ಾ, ೀ or ೂ to ಽ; as, ಅಽನಂತ (orig., ಅ + ಾನಂತ); similarly, ಅಽನಂತಕ್ಯ, ಅಽನಂತ (orig., ಅ + ೀನಂತ); ಅಽನಂತಕ್ಯ).

(5).—Crude bases of nouns (including substantives and adjectives) terminating in ಅ, ಆ, ಾ or ೂ, when used as the first member of a compound, substitute ಽ for their final endings; as, ಅಮರಽದ್ರುಮ (orig., ... + ಆದ್ರುಮ); ಗಿರಿಽಶ (orig., ... + ೀಶ); ಅಽಂಬರ (orig., ... + ಆಂಬರ); ಅಮರಽಸಿಂಹ (orig., ... + ೂಸಿಂಹ); ಅಮರಽಕೋಶ (orig., ... + ೂಕೋಶ); ಅಽಂಬರಽಧರ (orig., ... + ಾಂಬರಧರ); ಅಽಭ್ರಂಕಽಷ (orig., ... + ೂಭ್ರಂಕಷ); similarly, ಅಽಭ್ರಂಕಽಷಿತ.

(6).—Crude forms of adjectives ending in ಅ change, with very few exceptions, the final ಅ to ಽ before the suffix ಅರ of the comparative and ಅಷ್ಠ of the superlative; as, ಅಽಲ್ಪಽತರ ಅಲ್ಪ, ಅಲ್ಪಽತಮ; ಅಽಧಿಕ, ಅಽಧಿಕತರ, ಅಽಧಿಕತಮ, &c.

21. ಋ—(1). This letter, as a penultimate vowel, is always a substitute for ಅ before the finals ಽ and ಃ; as, ಽಋಷಭ (orig., ಽ + ಅಷಭ); similarly, ಽಋಷಭಸ್ವರ, ಃಋಣ, ಃಋಷಿ.[1]

(2).—As an initial, medial or final letter, it is a sort of diphthong in several instances of ಾ (ೃ) before ಕ್ಯ, ಕ್ಷ, ಕ್ಷ್ಮ, ಷ್ಟ, ಷ್ಠ and ಷ್ಮ; as, ಅಽಕ್ಯ, ಅಽಕ್ಷ, ಅಽಕ್ಷ್ಮ, ಅಽಷ್ಟ, ಅಽಷ್ಠ, ಅಽಷ್ಮ,

[1] Occasionally, a medial ಽ or ಃ also changes its preceding ಅ to ಋ; as, ಅಽಕ್ಷ, ಅಽಕ್ಷರ (also, ಅಽಕ್ಷರ); ಅಽಕ್ಷಯ (also, ಅಽಕ್ಷಯ): ಽಋಷಿಃ (orig., ಽಷಿಃ); ಅಽಷ್ಟ (but, ಽಷ್ಟ)

[illegible]

(3).—Sometimes, though rarely, a medial [illegible] is a substitute for [illegible]; *e.g.*, [illegible] approach, arrival (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] darkness (orig., [illegible])

Changes of Vowels.

22. The original vowels in words are, in several cases, substituted for different ones, *viz.*:— [illegible] for [illegible]. Examples, [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]), [illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

[illegible] for [illegible]. Examples, [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] ([illegible])

[illegible] for [illegible]. Examples, [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] ([illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] ([illegible]).

Insertion of Redundant Vowels.

23. Occasionally, redundant vowels are inserted in words. These are [illegible]. Examples:—

[illegible] (originally, [illegible] Sans. [illegible])

[illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

[illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

[illegible] (orig., [illegible])

[illegible] (orig., [illegible])

[illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

ಸು—ಮಾಡುವುದು (orig., ಮಾಡು + ಉದು).

ಕ್ಕೆ—ಸಂಸ್ಕೃತ-ಶಬ್ದಗಳು (orig., ... + ಪದಗಳು).

Dropping of Vowels.

24. Sometimes, original vowels, either radical or affixal, are dropped from words. These are ಅ, ಆ, ಇ, ಈ, ಉ, ಋ. Examples:—

ಅ—ಬರೆಸಿದನು (orig., ಬರಿಸಿದನು); ಕಳ್ಳತನ (orig., ಕಳ್ಳತನ).

ಅ—ಮಾಡಿಸಿ-ಕೊಳ್ಳುವ (orig., ಮಾಡಿಸಿ + ಕೊಳ್ಳುವ).

ಅಲಂಕಾರವಾದ (orig., ಅಲಂಕಾರ + ಆದ).

ಇ—ಬಿಟ್ಟು (orig., ಬಿಡು + ಇ).

ಇ—ಮಾಡಿಕೊಳ್ಳಲು (orig., ಇ—ಮಾಡಿಕೊಳ್ಳಲು).

ಇ—ಮಾಡಲು (=ಮಾಡಲು + ಇಲ್ಲ).

ಉ—ಮಾಡಿಸಿದ (orig., ಮಾಡಿಸು + ಇದ).

ಋ—ಮಾಡಿದ (orig., ಮಾಡಿಋ + ಇದ).

Lengthening and Shortening of Vowels.

25. In some rare instances, the original short vowels become long, and vice versâ.

(1).—ಅ, ಇ, ಉ and ಋ are lengthened, *i.e.*, changed to ಆ, ಈ, ಊ, and ೠ, respectively. Examples:—

ಬಾಳೆಯಣ್ಣು (from ಬಳೆ); ಆಸರ (also, ಅಸರ); ಆಳುವ, ಆಳ್ವಿಕೆ (from ಅಳು); ಆಳ್ವಿಕೆಯಲ್ಲಿ (also, ಅಳ್ವಿಕೆಯಲ್ಲಿ); ಪೂರ್ವಕಾಲದಲ್ಲಿ (-ಕಾಲದಲ್ಲಿ); rt. ಇರು. ಈಡು (rt. ಇಡು, ಇಡ್); ಕೀಳು (also, ಕಿಳು)

(2).—Shortening of long vowels, viz., ಆ changed to ಅ; ಈ to ಇ; ಊ to ಉ. Examples:—ಅಳಿಯಂದಿರು (orig., ಆಳಿಯಂದಿರು); ಅಳ್ವಿಕೆ (orig., ಆಳ್ವಿಕೆ); ಅಳಿಲು (rt. ಈಳ್); ಅಳಿಯ-ಕಟ್ಟಿನ (orig., ಈಳಿಯ-ಕಟ್ಟಿನ); ಅಳವಡಿಸು (rt. ಈಳ್); ಅಳಿಯಂದಿರು (also, ಈಳಿಯಂದಿರು).

	Surd or hard consonants.			Sonant or soft consonants.				
	Unaspirate.	Aspirate.	Sibilants.	Unaspirate.	Aspirate.	Nasal.	Sibilants.	Semi-vowels.
Gutturals.....	ٯ	ٮ, ٣	...	٭	٤ ٮ	٣	...	...
Palatals	٩	...	ٯ	٩	...	٭	ٯ	٣ ,,
Linguals	...	...	٣ ٣	...	...	...	...	١
Dentals	٩, ٣	٥	٭	ٯ	٤	١ ٭	٭	...
Labials.....	٭	٥	...	ٯ	...	٩	...	٩ ,, ٭

OBSERVATION 1.—The primary divisions of the consonants are three, viz., the guttural, the dental and the labial. The palatal and the lingual are the modifications of the guttural and the dental, respectively. Except a sibilant and a semi-vowel, there are, in fact, no linguals in Avesta. Consequently, the Sanskrit linguals ट ठ ड ढ ण are often changed to the corresponding dentals 𐬙 𐬚 𐬛 𐬜 𐬞 in Avesta. The aspirates of the palatals 𐬘 and 𐬝 are substituted for those of the gutturals 𐬐 and 𐬑; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬀); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬌𐬝𐬌 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬌𐬑𐬌); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬌 (orig., 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙 + 𐬌); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬌𐬞𐬌 (from 𐬞𐬌); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬌𐬚 (rt. 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬚), &c. But in sibilants, the Avesta language is peculiarly rich, even richer than Sanskrit and Persian—the latter having four (viz., स, श, ژ, ش), and the former three sibilants, (viz., 𐬯, 𐬰, 𐬱).

OBSERVATION 2 :—The aspirates, except 𐬓 𐬔 and 𐬅, are formed by the addition of *h* to the preceding consonants, whether hard or soft. This addition of *h* is clearly seen, when the same letters are written in the Roman characters; as, 𐬐 kh, 𐬑 gh, 𐬚 th, 𐬛 dh, 𐬞 ph. The consonant 𐬅 is a sonant aspirate, most probably of the Pehlvi 𐬉, which is pronounced both *a* and *h*, *e.g.*, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬉 *akanárak* boundless: 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬙 *humata*, a good thought, &c.

Changes of Consonants.

27. In Avesta, when two certain consonants come together, either in the body of a simple word, or as the final and the initial consonants of the members of a compound, the second consonant exercises its influence over the first; in other words, final consonants have a tendency to adapt themselves to the initial, rather than the initial to the final, as will be seen from the following rules :—

Aspirating Letters.

28. The letters 𐬀, 𐬌, 𐬉, 𐬎, 𐬋, 𐬊, 𐬄, when preceded by unaspirate consonants, change the latter, in most cases, to their corresponding aspirate forms. Examples :—

[illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]); [illegible] (Sans. [illegible]); [illegible] (Sans. [illegible]); [illegible]

---

[1] [illegible] and [illegible] in their aspirate forms are, as aforesaid, changed to [illegible] and [illegible] for want of palatal aspirates in Avesta, corresponding to Sanskrit [illegible] and [illegible].

[2] It should be remarked that [illegible] does not always aspirate its preceding [illegible], as, [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

[3] The letter [illegible], coming in immediate contact with [illegible] on account of its preceding [illegible] being dropped, changes the latter to its aspirate form.

[4] The second [illegible] being eliminated.

[5] Exceptions:—[illegible] (Geld.)

[6] Exception:— [illegible]. Note that [illegible] and [illegible], when preceded by a sibilant, are not changed to their aspirate forms, even though followed by [illegible], [illegible] or [illegible]; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

[7] Exceptions:— [illegible]

ವಿದ್ವತ್ತು, ಭದ್ರಕ್ಕೆ (Sans. ಭದ್ರ); ಅಭಿವೃದ್ಧಿ; ಉದ್ಭವ (orig., ಉ+ಪ್ರಭವ); ಉದ್ಯಮ (=ಉ+ಯಮ); ಉದ್ಯಾನ (orig., ಉ+ಪ್ಯಾನ); ಉಚ್ಚಾಟನೆ (from ಪಾಟ), &c.

ಲ and ಳ, when preceded by ಮ or ಣ, insert ಡ before them: as, ಅಣ + ಲಘು = ಅಣ್ಡಲಘು; ಅಮರ + ಲೋಕ = ಅಮರಾಲ್ಡಲೋಕ; similarly, ಅಣ್ಡಳಿಯ, ಅಮರಾಲ್ಡಳಿಯ, ಅಣ್ಡಲೆಯ, ಅಮರಾಲ್ಡಲೆಯ, ಅಮರಾಲ್ಡಳಿಯ.

Contact of Final and Initial Dentals.

29. Final ತ, ದ, ನ or ಲ, before initial ತ, is changed to ಚ; as, ಅತ + ತಪ = ಅಚ್ಚಪ; ಅಪ + ದಾನ = ಅಪ್ಪಾನ; ಎಚ್ಚ + ಅಪ = ಎಚ್ಚಾಪ (ಅ being dropped); ಅತ + ಲಸ = ಅಚ್ಚಸ.

30. Final ತ, ದ, ನ or ಲ, before initial ನ or ಲ, is generally changed to ನ್ನ, sometimes to ಲ್ಲ; as, ಪದ + ನ = ಪದ್ನ; ಅಲ + ದನ = ಅಲ್ಲನ; ಅನ + ನಯ = ಅನ್ನಯ; ಅನ + ಲಘು = ಅನ್ನಲಘು.

Observation.—It will be seen from the above that, if two dentals come in contact, the first is changed to a hard or a soft sibilant, according as the following dental is hard or soft.

---

† *Note.*—In these two examples (viz., ವಿದ್ವತ್ತು and ಅಭಿವೃದ್ಧಿ), the consonant ವ, after aspirating the preceding letters ತ and ಧ, is itself changed to ಬ. Exceptions:—ಅಧ್ವರ್ಯು, ಅಧ್ವಾನ, ಅಧ್ವಜ್ಞ. ವ and ಯ do not aspirate the initial ತ or ಧ; as, ಅತ್ಯ, ಧಾತ್ರಿ, ಧಾತ್ರೀಫಲ (Eng. 11, 12.)

Changes of Final Consonants.

31. Final $\mathfrak{g}$, before initial $\mathfrak{p}$, is changed to $\mathfrak{z}$; as, $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}+\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}$;[1] $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{f}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{f}$; $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{f}-\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}$ (fr. $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{f}$)

32. Final $\mathfrak{z}$, $\mathfrak{u}$ or $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}$, before initial $\mathfrak{p}$, is generally changed to $\mathfrak{u}$, sometimes to $\mathfrak{u}$; as, $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$; $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}$ (from $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{r}$); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{l}-\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$ (fr. $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{u}$); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}$ (fr. $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{u}$); $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}$ (=$\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}$); $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}=\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}$.

33. Final $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}$ or $\mathfrak{u}$, before initial $\mathfrak{g}$ or $\mathfrak{r}$, is changed to $\mathfrak{u}$; as, $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{g}$ $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}=\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{p}$ (Gâth.)

34. Final $\mathfrak{z}$, before initial $\mathfrak{l}$, is changed to $\mathfrak{u}$ or $\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}$; as, $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{l}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$; $\mathfrak{u}+\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{u}$ (the second $\mathfrak{u}$ being dropped); $\mathfrak{l}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}=\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}$.

35. Final $\mathfrak{z}$, before initial $\mathfrak{g}$, is changed to $\mathfrak{u}$; as, $\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}$ $=\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}$; $\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{r}=\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{r}$; $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}+\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$, &c.

36. Surd finals before sonant letters are changed to corresponding sonants; as, $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$; $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{g}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}=$ $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{l}\mathfrak{z}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$ (Gâth.); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}$ (Sans. वाक्) $=\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$ ($\mathfrak{u}$ being dropped); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$ (orig., $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$ $\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}=\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$; $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$ (orig., $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$ $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$ (orig., $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{p}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$ $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$ (orig., $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$); $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$ $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}$ (orig., $\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{u}+\mathfrak{g}\mathfrak{u}\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{g}$).

37. Final $\mathfrak{u}$, before initial $\mathfrak{p}$ or $\mathfrak{b}$, is changed to $\mathfrak{u}$; as,

[1] Compare English, To grunt, To Grumble.

[illegible]

38. Final ꣝, before initial ꣟ or ꣠, is changed to ꣛; as, [illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

39. Final vowels (except ꣿ and ꣾ) and consonants mostly change the following ꣟ to ꣞; as, [illegible]; [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

40. Final ꣣ unites with initial ꣝ to ꣟; *e. g.*, [illegible] (Gâth.); similarly, [illegible] Gâth., (orig., [illegible]).

41. Final ꣤, before ꣞ or ꣟, is changed to ꣥; *e. g.*, [illegible].

42. Final ꣛ unites with initial ꣠ to ꣡; *e. g.*, [illegible].

43. Final ꣟ unites with initial ꣝ to ꣠; *e. g.*, [illegible].

44. Final ꣛, ꣟, ꣞ or ꣠ unites with ꣞ to ꣞; *e. g.*, [illegible]; [illegible].

45. Initial ꣝, before final vowels (except ꣾ, ꣿ, ꣵ) and ꣢,

[1] ꣟ is euphonically inserted before ꣝; it has nothing to do with the etymology. This will be fully explained hereafter.

is changed to ◌ं ; as, ◌ं + ◌ं = ◌ं ; ◌ं + ◌ं = ◌ं Gâth. ; ◌ं + ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं Gâth., (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं).

48. Lastly, it should be noticed that, when two consonants of the same class (except dentals) or two sibilants, one as a final and the other as an initial, come in contact, the two are assimilated into one surd or sonant according as the latter is hard or soft ; as, ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ◌ं being changed to ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं ; cf. ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं).

Changes of penultimate ◌ं, ◌ं, ◌ं and ◌ं before final ।

47. Final । changes its preceding—

◌ं to ◌ं ; as, ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं) ; similarly, ◌ं, ◌ं, ◌ं ; sometimes to ◌ं ; as, ◌ं (orig., ◌ं + ◌ं).

---

[1] ◌ं + ◌ं = ◌ं = ◌ं = ◌ं = Sans. ◌ं = ◌ं a cloud.

[2] ◌ं + ◌ं = ◌ं = ◌ं = ◌ं (See Yt. 8, 22, 28).

[3] Notice the same change of ◌ं before । (◌ं), though seldom, in the body of words ; as, ◌ं, ◌ं, ◌ं, ◌ं, ◌ं, &c.

ా to ి; as, [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); similarly, [illegible].

ాా to ీ; as, [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); sometimes to ె; as, [illegible] (orig., [illegible])

ాు (preceded by ా) to ెు or ొు; as, [illegible] (= [illegible]); [illegible] (= [illegible])

Final ి or ిు changes the preceding ాా to ీా, sometimes to ాా; as, [illegible]; [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig. [illegible])

Changes of penultimate ా, ా, ె-ె, ొ-ొ, ాా and ాు before final ɛ.

48. Final ɛ changes its preceding—

ా to ి; as, ɛ+[illegible]=[illegible]; ɛ+[illegible]=[illegible]; sometimes to ె; as, [illegible] (also, [illegible]); [illegible] (also, [illegible]); [illegible] (also, [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible]

ా to ీ; as, ɛ+[illegible]=[illegible]; ɛ+[illegible]=[illegible]; similarly, [illegible]

ె or ొ to ె; as, ɛ+[illegible]=[illegible]; ɛ+[illegible]=[illegible]; similarly, [illegible] (=ɛ+ె...)

---

[1] Initial ɛ, after a final ా, also changes the latter to ి, sometimes to ె; as, [illegible]=[illegible]; [illegible]=[illegible].

ং or ঃ to ঃ; as, ং+দেব = দেবঃ; ং+বিদ্বান্ ও = বিদ্বান্ঃ ও; বিদ্বান্ঃ ও (= ং+ও)

ংস (preceded by a consonant) to ঃ; as, ং+সত্যংস = সত্যংঃ; ং+মংস্যংস = মংস্যংঃ

ংস (preceded by ং) to শ; as, ং+সংস্কারংস = সংস্কারংশ; ং+সংসারংস = সংসারংশ life; ং+সংহারংস = সংহারংশ

ংস (preceded by ং) to স; as, ং+সংক্রমংস = সংক্রমংস a step; ং+সংক্রামকংস = সংক্রামকংস

ংস (preceded by a consonant) to ষ; as, ং+রাষ্ট্রংস = রাষ্ট্রংষ; ং+রাষ্ট্রপতিংস = রাষ্ট্রপতিংষ

ংস (preceded by ং) to ট or ঠ; as, ং+কংস = কংট; ং+কংসঠ = কংঠ; ং+কংস(ঃ)ট(ঃ) = কংট; কংসংস (orig., কংসংস) = কংসংস.

ংস (preceded by শ) to ং or ষ; as, ং+কংশংস = কংশং; ং+কংশংস = কংষ্ (শ being euphonically changed to ষ্); ং+কংশংসকংস = কংষ্কংস; ং+কংশংসংস = কংষ্সংস.

48. The verbal terminations ংত ন্তি, ংমংত ন্তু, ংস, ংসি (Ved.), -ংত শ্ত, শত্রংত শান, শত্রংত মানি and -ংত ন lengthen the preceding

---

[1] Exceptions:—কংস, কংসংসংস (= ং+ংস...)

[2] Exceptions:—কংস (orig., ং+কংস); কংসংত, কংসংত (Gold orig., ং+কংসংত); কংসংস্

[3] Also, কংস্ (See Yt. 5, 63). Exceptions:—কংস্কংস, কংস্সংস (orig., ং+কংস...).

ᵐᵃ, as, ᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃ (orig., ᵃᵛᵃ + ᵐᵃ); ᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃ–ᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵐᵃᵗᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, &c.

Comp. Sans. नवानि, नवान, नवानवे, नवनाव, नवनावानि, &c.

50. Further, ᵃᵛᵃ, when preceded by ᵐᵃ, changes the latter to ᵏᵘᵛᵃ; as, ᵃᵛᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ (orig., ᵃᵛᵃ + ᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ). Similarly, ᵃᵛᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵃᵛᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵃᵛᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ ᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ. Sometimes, to ᵐᵃᵛᵃ; as, ᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ (orig., ᵃᵛᵃ + ᵐᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ)

Insertion of ɜ and ᵏ before ᵛ in the body of words.

51. ɜ, ᵏ—These two nasals, which precede ᵛ in certain cases, are peculiar to Avesta only, having nothing to do with the etymology. Unlike other letters, they do not interchange with any Sanskrit character. The rules which regulate their insertion in words are as follow:—

52. ᵛ, when followed by any vowel (except ᵃ, ᵘ, ᵏᵘ) or ᵞ, and preceded by ᵐ, ᶠ or ᵗ, inserts ɜ before it; as, ᵐᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵐᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛ ᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ; ᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛ; (Geld., ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃ; also, ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃ); ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, (Geld., -ᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ; ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛ also, ᵈᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ)

---

[1] Exceptions.—ᵏᵘᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵏᵘᵗᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ.

[2] A medial ᵐᵃᵛᵃ is also generally changed to ᵏᵘᵛᵃ before the verbal terminations ᵃᵗ, ᵘᵗ, ᵃᵗᵃ, ᵘᵗᵃ, ᵃᵗ, ᵘᵗ; as, ᵃᵛᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵘᵗᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵗᵃᵛ, ᵘᵗᵃᵏᵘᵛᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃᵏᵃᵗᵃᵛ, &c.

[3] Exceptions.—ᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃ, ᵐᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃ, ᵐᵃᵗᵃᵐᵃ, ᵈᵘᵐᵃᵛᵃᵐᵃ

Exceptions:— ಕಾಲ್ಲ, ಕಾಲ್ಲುಮಾಡುವ (orig., +ಮಾಡುವ ಕಾಲ್ಲು)

53. ಲ, when followed by ಾ or ೂ and preceded by ೂ, inserts ಇ before it; *e. g.*, ಬೆಳ್ಳಿಗೆ = ಬೆಳಗ್ಗೆ, ಮಲ್ಲಿಗೆ = ಮಳಿಗೆ.

54. ಲ, when followed by any vowel (except ಾ-ೆ) or ಯ, and preceded by ಾ or ಳ, inserts ಕ before it; as, ಬಾಲಕಿಯ ಳಾಲಕಿಯನು, ಮಲ್ಲಿಕಾರ್ಜುನ, ಬಾಲಕಿಯರು, ಬೆಳ್ಳಿಕಾಯಿ, ಬಾಲಕಿಯಳು (also, ಮಲ್ಲಿಕಾರ್ಜುನ Yt. 13, 110); ಬಾಲಕಿಯಾಗಿ. Also ಬಾಳಿಕೆಯಲ್ಲಿ (See Yt. 1, 32).

Exception:— ಬೆಳ್ಳಾಲದಲ್ಲಿಯಕಿ Geld. Yc. 37, 18.

55. ಲ, when preceded by ಿ and followed by ಾ or ೆ, inserts ಕ before it; *e. g.*, ಬಿಲ್ಕಾರಿ Yc. 29, 10.

56. ಲ, when followed by ಗ and preceded by ೂ, inserts ಇ before it, but itself is dropped; as, ಮೂಗಿನ (orig., ಮೂಲ್ಗಿನ ಮೂಲು) Sans. ಗಣ; ಬೆಳ್ಗಡಲ Geld. Yt. 14, 44.

Observation 1.—The terminations ಲು (ಮಾಲು) and ಕುಲ ¹ do not insert any of these nasals (ನ, ಕ), though preceded by one of the vowels mentioned above; as, ಮಾಲುವಿಕೆ, ಮಾಲುವಿಕೆ, ಕುಲಾಲರು, ಕುಲಾಲಕುಲಜ.

Observation 2.—In several instances, ಉಚ್ಚ—and ಮಾಲುಚ್ಚ—are changed to ಂ ಉಚ್ಚ—and ಮಾಲುಚ್ಚ— respectively; as, ಕಂಡುಚ್ಚಿಲ್ಲ (orig., ಕ+ಂ+ಉಚ್ಚಿಲ್ಲ); ಮಾಲುಚ್ಚಿಲ್ಲದೆ (orig., ಮಾಲು

¹ But, ಕುಲಾಲಕುಲಜ ಕುಲಾಲಸ್ತ್ರೀ; ಕು, and not ಕುಲ, being the terminal suffix. The original words are ಕುಲಾಲಜ and ಕುಲಾಲಸ್ತ್ರೀ.

; (orig.,); but Yt. 5, 120.

Observation 3.—Occasionally, is substituted for or ; as, (orig., , Sans.); (fr. ; orig.,)

Transmutation of the Avesta Consonants into Sanskrit and Persian.

57. As Sanskrit is very closely allied to the Avesta language, and as pure Persian, unmixed with any Arabic element, is a direct off-shoot of the same, it will not be amiss, in this place, to compare the Avesta characters with those of Sanskrit and Persian, and illustrate them by examples. The rules, by which those letters are interchanged with Sanskrit and Persian, will greatly assist Avesta students in settling the meanings of many words with the aid of the lexicons now extant of these two languages, till a trustworthy and comprehensive Avesta dictionary is published.

=क, ک, گ; as, =कार, =work; =a wolf.

(before an aspirating consonant)=क, خ, ه: as, =to cry, to bewail; =बीज a seed; strong. Comp. =strong-bodied.

क, ख, خ; as, =खर, an ass; =an earthen pot.

=ख, ش, خش; as, =शब night; =a dominion; =they bestow.

=ग, خ; as, =ग्रह, خواب sleep; =ग्रह by one's own self.

---

[1] *Note.*—Aspirate letters before , , , , , , , are to be substituted, in most cases, for the corresponding unaspirate ones in Sanskrit.

Occasionally, 𐬯𐬀𐬰𐬀 (Sans. स्व) being substituted for 𐬯𐬀𐬨𐬀 (one's own self), both forms are met with in Avesta; as, 𐬯𐬀𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀, 𐬯𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 self-lighted. (See Vend. 2, 30; Yt. 10, 142). Similarly, rt. 𐬐𐬀𐬨, 𐬐𐬀𐬰, to eat, to drink; as, 𐬐𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 and 𐬐𐬀𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀; 𐬐𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 and 𐬐𐬀𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀; 𐬐𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 and 𐬐𐬀𐬰𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀.

Note.—𐬯, according to Dr. Geldner, is used before 𐬌 only; e.g. 𐬯𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬯𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬭𐬀, 𐬯𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀, 𐬯𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌, 𐬯𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀, 𐬯𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 𐬯𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬯𐬀, &c.

𐬩 = ग, घ. ञ; as, 𐬐𐬀𐬩𐬀, गो, ग्यू, mas. a bull; fem. a cow: 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬩𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 = अङ्गुष्ठ the toe; 𐬐𐬀𐬩𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 पर्व heel.

𐬴 (before an aspirating consonant) = ग; as, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬴𐬀 अग्र top, summit; 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬴 अग्र very strong; 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬴𐬀 नग्न naked.

𐬵 = न, ण, ञ, ङ, ं, ँ; as, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵 = मन्य divine power; 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵 = काण, कान, ढ़ a scar (lit.), a mark; 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬵 = अनि, अ; a woman.

𐬫 = व; as, rt. 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬫 = वर to flow.

Note.—𐬫 is a soft form of 𐬯𐬀; both forms, though rarely, are met with; as, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬫𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 (See Spiegel Yaç 17, 4).

𐬱 = ष, ह, ह, ज; as, rt. 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 = घर, चरित्र to graze, to walk about. 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 = यो a place where anything grows. 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 = यह्वन् पुं fire.

𐬲 = ग, ज, ङ, ह, ज; as, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 = मज्जति he or she reaches

[1] As, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀, a corn-field; 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬭𐬀 a corn field

-gone; [illegible] asked for, demanded; [illegible] living; rt. [illegible] to strike, to kill.

[illegible]; as, [illegible] the body; [illegible] the Creator.

Note 1.—This letter (ꬹ) never comes at the end of a word or the first member of a compound, except when preceded by ꬱ or ꬲ; as, [illegible], &c.

Note 2.—[illegible] (past partic. pass.) = ꬱ or ꬲ; e. g., [illegible] =आहृत ठाउर्ग brought; [illegible] =बद्ध सत्र bound; [illegible] =कृत ठाउर्ग done, &c.

[illegible]; as, [illegible] having a son or children; [illegible] =सन्तति; [illegible] =निष्ट any. et return.

Note.—This letter (ꬺ) is used at the beginning or in the body of a word before ꬵ or ꬶ only; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; also, before the suffix particles [illegible] (fish.), [illegible] (fish.), preceded by a vowel; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]. At the end of a word it always follows a vowel; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

[illegible]; as, [illegible] hatred.

[illegible] (before an aspirating consonant) = ꬾ [illegible] (rarely); as, [illegible] =पवित्र a holy text, [illegible] =त्राण a protector; Per. [illegible] = place of protection, a mansion (from rt. [illegible] to protect); [illegible] = धारा a stream.

= ष, ष; श (rarely); स, = स्वन a chariot; = स्वन a bow; rt. (in) = सन to be calm-mediumbed.

= ज, ज ; स, = दूर, ज़ remote; = पशु the female of the animal kind; = यवस, यव grain.

Note.—In several instances, the radical between two vowels, is changed to ; e. g., lawful; unlawful (rt.); (rt. वद्, वन्द् to deceive); (orig., +).

= ज ; स, = विद्या learning; = ज्ञान; = ज, ज ; स, = अधर, नीचे beneath, under; = मधु, मद्य honey, grape wine; = वीर hero.

Note.—never begins or ends a word; the initial of the root is, in the formation of a complete word, changed to ; as, from (Sans. धृ to hold), ; (Sans. धाव् to rush).

= ह, ह, ग, ग ; स, = धारण preserving; = वन्द् to bind.

Note 1.—The final of nominal bases ending in is changed to in the voc. sing.; e. g., (orig.,); (orig.,); (orig.,); (orig.,), &c.

Note 2.—क, ख, ग, घ—In Sanskrit the use of a nasal in the body of a word is regulated by the consonant following that nasal; i.e., the consonant takes before it (if there is an occasion

for one) the nasal of its own class. In Avesta, under similar circumstances, ꬹ or ꬺ is mostly used for क, च, ट and त; and ꬾ before labials, as, अङ्क a hook; काञ्चन gold; पण्डित learned; बन्धन binding; कम्पन trembling, &c. 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀, &c.

ꬹ=क, ख, च, ज, ट; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=पितर پدر a father: ꬹꬱ=अप ـآب water: 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀=पालन ـبان a protector; rt. 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=पत=أفتادن, پتاد to fall, rt. ꬹꬵ=हृ (Ved.) to seize or snatch from.

ꬺ (before an aspirating consonant) =ट, प, फ; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=पश्न پرسش a question; 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀=पुत्र پسر an offspring. (forward. ꬺ=ह, भ, ध, ढ; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=सफ, سُم a hoof: 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=तार تراز

ꬾ=ब, म, व, प, ग; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=बोध intellect; rt. 𐬀𐬵=बुध् بودن to be; rt. 𐬀𐬵=भा-भू, آوردن to bring: 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=भेषज, پزشکی a remedy, a medicine.

ꬿ=द, ध, ड, ढ; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=मातर, मादर مادر a mother; rt. 𐬀𐬵=मन् to speak; 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=नग्न naked.

ꬼ, ꬽ=ज, झ, य; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=यव, جو barley, corn; rt. 𐬀𐬵=यज्, یشتن to adore, to invoke.

ꬻ=र, ल, व, ळ; as, rt. 𐬀𐬵=रिक्त رختن to empty; rt. 𐬀𐬵=वृ to fly; 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=वीर=बीर (initial ब being dropped) a hero.

Observation.—In several instances, ꬻ is substituted for ꬹ in the same word; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀,

---

[1] As, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 a pair of greaves; so, پیلبان an elephant-keeper.

[2] 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀=पत=أفتادن (𐬀=अ) to fall down.

[illegible]

ẖ, n=न ; ch, j, g, d ; as, rt. [illegible]=फ़ा. شکافتن to torn ; d =ست he, she. [illegible] वात, ad wind ; [illegible] to separate.

uk=द, ध, ध, ध ; as, [illegible]=अध्वन् a road ; rt. [illegible]=अ-[illegible] to light up ; [illegible]=[illegible] to entrust.

Note.—[illegible], after ẖ or [illegible], is generally changed to uk ; e.g., [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]. [wind.

ah=ः Visarga (at the end of words) ; [illegible]= वायु Vayu,

pah=द, ध, शत ; as, [illegible]=मुष्टि, مشت a handful ; [illegible] [illegible]=वसिष्ठ best ; [illegible]=वसु excellent.

ṣṭ=द, ध, श ; as, [illegible]=इषु an arrow ; [illegible]=क्षेत्र, شهر land, a city.

Note.—ṣṭ may be said to have dropped its preceding ẖ, in cases where it changes with the Sans. ध ; *e.g.*, [illegible] (orig., [illegible])=दक्षिण right (not left) ; [illegible]=क्षुधा hunger ; [illegible]=अक्षि the eye ; [illegible]=क्षिति an abode, &c.

In several instances, ṣṭ (ẖṭ) is a substitute for p, pt (Sans. त्), [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) a rider (rt. [illegible] to ride) ; [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) a drinker, an eater (rt. [illegible]) ; [illegible]=पत्तन battle. Sometimes, both forms (viz., pt and ṣṭ ẖṭ) are met with, as, [illegible] and [illegible] Sans. नरः, نر a man (rt. [illegible]) ; [illegible] and [illegible] a bridge ; [illegible] and [illegible] पथ, پدر, देश. In Persian the same analogy holds good ;

i.e., we find both ز and ش in the same word; as, گشتن to turn, زدن: گشتن to have, دارند: گشتن and گردیدن to turn, to become, دیدن and گردیدن to fold, to twist.

ب=ब, ह, ज, ; as, بیدن=ज्ञा, बिद, ; a hoof; بیدن=ज्ञा, ; پرسد he or she asks; rt. سودن=काश, ; to be visible.

ستون =स्तम्भ, स्तभ; as, ستون=स्तम्भ a pillar, a post; rt. ستودن=स्तभ् to cut, to hurt.

ستودن=स्तु; as, rt. ستودن=स्तु, ستودن to praise, ستودن =स्तूपा a pillar; ایستادن=स्थिति standing. [प्रश्न a question.

ست=स्त, श; as, rt. دوستی=स्निह to bear affection to; دوستی= ستودن=स्त, स्त, स्क, ष्ट, स्त, स्त; as, ستودن=श्वेत स्त्र, سپید white; سپید=विश्व all, every; rt. سپیدن=स्पश् to inspect, rt. سپیدن=वि-स्पुर् سپیدن, سپیدن to stamp, to trample on.

ک=न, ह, ज, ज, ; as, سگالیدن=सगाव a son-in-law; rt. زادن=जन् زادن to be born; دست=हस्त, دست the hand; بزرگ=महत् great, large; گردیدن=ज्ञ devp. [to invoke.

گ=ह, ज्ञ; as, زبان=जिह्वा زبان the tongue; rt. خواندن=ह

ل=न, ण, ह, ज, ; as, زانو=जानु زانو the knee; شما=युष्मद् you; مار=अहि مار a snake; rt. سوختن=दह् to consume by fire.

ا at, as, دانستن=ज्ञान one who knows.

Insertion of Redundant Consonants in words.

58. Sometimes, redundant consonants are found inserted in the

[1] In Sanskrit, ह, between two vowels, is changed to ध.

body of words without affecting the meaning. They are 𐬀, 𐬁, 𐬂, 𐬃, 𐬄, 𐬅, 𐬆, 𐬇, 𐬈, 𐬉, 𐬊, 𐬋 and 𐬌. Examples:—

𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎 (orig., 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎) a sinful-wicked man.

𐬁𐬌𐬵𐬌 𐬎𐬀𐬎 (orig., 𐬵𐬌 + 𐬀𐬎, perf. partic. nom. plu.) those who have performed their actions.

𐬂𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (from 𐬵𐬀𐬁 = 𐬵𐬀 smoke, mist).

𐬃𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (loc. plu. of 𐬵𐬌𐬎 an enclosure).

𐬄𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (= 𐬵𐬌𐬀 + 𐬁𐬎 least).

𐬅𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (from 𐬆𐬌 the body).

𐬆𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬇𐬌 + 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎) the Maker.

𐬈𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬉𐬌 + 𐬀𐬎) drought of water.

𐬊𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 + 𐬌𐬀𐬎) the burning of corpses; 𐬋𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬋𐬀𐬎 + 𐬀𐬎) having the seed of the waters. [Zarathustra.

𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 + 𐬌𐬀𐬎) the father of 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬀𐬎𐬀 + 𐬵𐬀) pregnancy. 𐬃𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬃𐬌 to enter).

𐬇𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 + 𐬀𐬎) created from the waters; 𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (infin., rt. 𐬀) for being, to be.

𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬎 (fr. 𐬵𐬀 + 𐬃𐬀) heal ye!

Dropping of Consonants.

59. Contrary to what is just mentioned above, we meet with, though rarely, words from which consonants, either radical or affixal, are eliminated. They are 𐬀, 𐬁, 𐬂, 𐬃, 𐬄, 𐬅, 𐬆, 𐬇, 𐬈, 𐬉, 𐬊, 𐬋 and 𐬌. Examples:—

ಲಘು-ಅಕ್ಷರ (orig., ಅಕ್ಷರ+ಲಘು) amplitude, ease; ಲಘು (orig., ಲಘು+ಲಘು) light (not heavy), nimble.

ಲಕ್ಷಾವಧಿ-ಲಕ್ಷ (orig., ಲಕ್ಷ+ಅವಧಿ+ಲಕ್ಷ) fifty times.

ವಸ್ತು (originally, ವಸ್ತ್ರ) was, ಇದ್ದನು (for ಇದ್ದ ಪುರುಷ old. sing. of ಇದ್ದನು).

ಎರಡು (for ಎರಡ್ಡು) both; ಪ್ರಯಾಸಪಡಿಸಿ (orig., ಪ್ರಯಾಸ+ಪಡಿಸಿ) trouble; ಇರ್ವರು (for ಇರ್ವರ್ಗಳು) both. [thought.

ಕೊಲ್ಲಿಸಿದ (=ಕೊಲ್+ಇಸಿದ) killed; ಕೊಲಲು (=ಕೊಲ್+ಇಲು) killed; ಕಳೆದ (=ಕಳ್+ಇದ) passed; ಕಳೆದುಹೋಗು Sans. ಕಳ್ (orig., ಕಳ್+ಇದು+ಹೋಗು) married; ಮಾಡು (for ಮ+ಮಾಡು) Auxiliary 1st Per. Sing. Parasmai; rt. ಮ to be. [rule.

ಅಧಿಕಾರಿಯಾಗಿರು (orig., ಅಧಿಕಾರಿಯಾಗಿರು) mayst Thou

ಬಕ್ತ್ರಿಯಾ (orig., ಬಕ್ತ್ರಿಯಾ) Bactria.

ಪುರುಷ (orig., ಪುರುಷ) male.

ಕಣ್ಣು-ಕಣ್ಣಾಗಿ look, glance (rt. ಕಣ್ಣು); ಪ್ರವಾಹ (rt. ಪ್ರವಹ) flowing.

ಹೆಸರು-ಇಡಿಸಿ (orig., ಇಡು+ಅಲಿಸು) a name.

ಪಡೆದುಕೊಳ್ಳುವೆನು (orig., ಪಡೆದುಕೊಳ್ಳುವೆನು) thou wilt obtain; ಹೊಡೆವೆನು (orig., ಹೊಡೆವೆನು) thou wilt strike.

Transposition of letters.

60. In some instances, we come across words, in which letters change their places. Examples. ಬೇಡಿಕೊಳ್ಳು (in ಬೇಡಿಕೊಳ್ಳು) is from ಬೇಡ್ to ask; ಪ್ರಸಿದ್ಧಿಯಾಗು, from ಪ್ರಸಿದ್ಧ (Sans. ಪ್ರ, ಸಿದ್) to be extended; ಕೊಲ್ಲಿಸಿದನು, fr. ಕೊಲ್ to kill, ಒಣಗಿಹೋಗು (orig., ಒಣ+ಗು+ಹೋಗು; rt. ಒಣ i. e. to become dry).

(orig., + +) we praise.

(orig., +) for the world (dat. sing.).

(orig., +) good (fem.).

Wester. (orig., +) in the house.

Softening of Consonants.

61. The softening of consonants, which, among others, is a peculiar characteristic of the Gâthâ dialect, is also occasionally seen in the Avesta writings. Examples:—

, (from a bone); (originally,) said; (orig.,) a water-tank, a reservoir; (rt. to flow, to stream; (also.,) staunchest, (orig.,) northern; (rt. , Sans. to move quickly). (rt. , Sans. to wish). (in) fr. , Sans. to sharpen.

Dropping of Syllables.

62. Finally, we sometimes find syllables dropped from words. Examples:—

(orig., +); (orig., +); (orig., +); (orig.,); , , (orig., ...); (orig., +)

Observation.—From examples given above, it will be seen that the elimination, in most cases, takes place, in one of the two homogeneous syllables.

Chapter II.

On roots, and the formation of nominal bases.

63. After treating of letters, their characteristics and the rule of euphony (*sandhi*), we now come to roots and the formation of the crude bases of nouns substantive and adjective.

It should be remembered, that almost all nouns are formed from roots. A root in Avesta, as well as in Sanskrit, is always monosyllabic, and contains one single vowel, but it may have from one to four consonants. A single vowel, without any consonant, may also serve as a root; as, 𐬀, 𐬀𐬉, Sans. इ, ई to go.

Note.—The radical vowel may be always of one of the following:—𐬀, 𐬁, 𐬂, 𐬃, 𐬄, 𐬅, 𐬅𐬉; 𐬇 (rarely); e. g., 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 गर to be warm; 𐬵𐬌 दा to give; 𐬵𐬌𐬯 दिश to show; 𐬵𐬍 दी to guide; 𐬵𐬎 दुर to know; 𐬵𐬏 दू to cut, to slip; 𐬵𐬉 कृ to do; 𐬵𐬐 दो to cut (in 𐬀𐬵𐬇𐬵𐬙𐬵𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀).

64. The disposition of consonants in roots is not fixed by any rule. Some roots begin with one or two consonants and end in a vowel; as, 𐬵𐬉 भू to become; 𐬀𐬵𐬥 स्तु to praise. Some begin with a vowel and end in one or two consonants; as, 𐬵𐬎𐬌 इष् to wish; 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬥 अञ्ज to smear. Some begin and end with one or two consonants inclosing a medial vowel;[1] as, 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬙 इष्ट to hate; 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬙 चिन्त to think; 𐬵𐬉𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬀 छिन्द् to cut, 𐬵𐬉𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬀 स्कम्भ to make firm, to support, &c.

65. In several instances, primary roots affix a redundant consonant at the end; as, 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬭 from 𐬵𐬀𐬭, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬀 वर् वर्त to deceive; 𐬵𐬉𐬎𐬌𐬥 from 𐬵𐬉𐬎, 𐬵𐬉𐬎𐬌 हन् हन्त to strike, to wound; 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬭 fr. 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬙 चिर् to rule, to glitter; 𐬵𐬉𐬎𐬌𐬥 fr. 𐬵𐬉𐬎 हा to bathe; 𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬭

[1] *Vide* Professor Sir Monier Williams' Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., pp. 40-41.

fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬰, 𐬵𐬀𐬰, 𐬵𐬀𐬰𐬌 to twist; 𐬨𐬎𐬌𐬎 from 𐬨𐬎 to kill; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬰 fr. 𐬀 𐬵𐬀 वन् to divide; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬰 fr. 𐬀 𐬵𐬀 वन् to join.

66. There are in Avesta, as in Sanskrit, a few verbal roots, which, without undergoing any change, are used as nominal bases; as, root 𐬨𐬀𐬎 वच् to speak; 𐬨𐬀𐬎 a word; rt. 𐬚𐬀𐬎 द्रुह् Gor. Tragen to hurt, to deceive; 𐬚𐬀𐬎 a deceiver; rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬎 to know; 𐬵𐬀 wise, knowing; rt. 𐬌𐬎 to love; 𐬌𐬎 loving; rt. 𐬀𐬵 आप् to join; 𐬀𐬵 duration (as, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 for all duration); rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬎 to be exalted; 𐬵𐬀𐬎 lofty, exalted.

67. Many roots, without undergoing any change, are also used as the last members of compound nouns; and when thus employed, they generally convey the sense of a present participle of the active; as, 𐬨𐬀𐬎-𐬀𐬵𐬀 spreading death in the world; 𐬵𐬀-𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬎 doing harm to the workman; -𐬚𐬀𐬎 𐬚𐬀𐬎 breaking the contract (lit.), lying unto Mithra, &c. Compare Sanskrit धर्मकृत् knowing the law; वेदवित् knowing the Vedas.

When a root, that ends in a vowel, is used in this manner, the letter 𐬉 is sometimes affixed to it; as, 𐬚𐬀𐬎-𐬌𐬵𐬀 praising the lord (lit.); 𐬚𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬵𐬀 bearing (a person) ill-will; -𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬚𐬀𐬎 increasing wisdom. Exception:—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (pr. n.)

Note.—Compare Sanskrit, in which क् is affixed when a root ends in a short vowel only; as, विश्वजित् conquering all (fr. जि). चित्रकृत् making pictures, a painter (fr. कृ).

68. In some rare instances, the reduplicated and desiderative forms of a root are used as nominal bases: as, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀 𐬵𐬀 जिह्वा the tongue (rt. 𐬵𐬀 ह्वे, ह्वा to call, to name, to invoke); 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 seeing (rt. 𐬵𐬀, 𐬵𐬀). 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 a cur beginning to bark (rt. 𐬵). 𐬵𐬀𐬚𐬀𐬚 wishing to live (desider. base; rt. 𐬚 to live; see 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬚𐬀𐬚 gen. pln., Yaç. 35, 3).

69. The bases[1] of nouns substantive and adjective are formed by adding certain suffixes to the root, the vowel of which is, in many cases, liable at the same time to be changed to its guṇa or vriddhi equivalent. These suffixes are called Primary (कृत्) Suffixes[2]; and the bases so formed are called Primary Nominal Bases. Again, from the nominal bases so formed, other nominal bases are derived by means of other suffixes, called Secondary (तद्धित) Suffixes;[4] and the bases so formed are called Secondary Nominal Bases; as, [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), &c., are primary nominal bases; while, [illegible] (fr. [illegible]), [illegible] (fr. [illegible]), [illegible] (fr. [illegible]), &c., are secondary nominal bases.

It should be noted then, that the nominal base is the crude or naked form of a noun which serves as the basis of its case-inflexions;[3] *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

Caution.—In the formation of nominal bases, when final radical letters combine with the initial letters of suffixes, the rules of euphonic change (*sandhi*) must be observed.

70. List of Ordinary Primary (or कृत्) Suffixes.[5]

Primary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
[illegible]	[illegible]

---

[1] Also called the crude bases or crude forms.

[2] A list of these suffixes is given below.

[3] Compare Professor Sir Monier Williams' Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 42.

[4] Observe that these suffixes, unless specified, are mostly employed to form adjectives and substantives mas. and neut.

[5] This suffix forms substantives, which generally denote the action or state expressed by the verbal root; *e. g.*, [illegible] regulation (rt. [illegible] to govern); [illegible] action (rt. [illegible] to do). In several instances, it is employed to form substantives denoting the agent; *e. g.*, [illegible] a killer (rt. [illegible] to kill). It generally changes the radical vowel to its guṇa or vriddhi substitute. This [illegible], as well as all other suffixes, ending in [illegible], when

Primary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
[1]	
[2]	
[4]	

adjectively used, lengthen their final vowel in the feminine gender; as, (mas. and neut.); (fem.); (mas. and neut.); (fem.); (mas. and neut.) (fem.). Sometimes, it (*i.e.*,) is affixed to the reduplicated form of a root; as, (rt. to protect; orig.,); (rt. ;)

[1] Generally forms agentive nouns; *e.g.*, . Comp. Sans. अक in पाठक receiving, बोधक an informer.

[2] Forms in most cases neuter substantives; *e.g.*, , , &c. Comp. Sans. अस् in मनस्, यशस्, चेतस्.

[3] Forms substantives which denote the action or state expressed by the root, the instrument or means by which that action or state is brought about, &c.; *e.g.*, (rt.); (rt.), , &c. Comp. Sans. अस in भोजस food, मरण death.

[4] An abridged form of denoting the agent =orig., ; rt. , Sans. अस् to breathe.

Primary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
[illegible] [1]	[illegible]
[illegible] [2]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible] [3]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible] [2]	[illegible]
[illegible] [4]	[illegible]
[illegible] [5]	[illegible]

[1] Forms neuter substantives which are indeclinable; *e.g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible].

[2] Generally forms agentive nouns.

[3] It forms (1) material nouns; as, [illegible] the hand, [illegible] a fountain; (2) agentive nouns (orig., [illegible]); as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; (3) passive past participles; as, [illegible] wished, [illegible] done.

[4] Mostly forms agentive mas. substantives; as, [illegible], [illegible], &c. Exception.—[illegible] (fem.) a mother. Comp. Sans. तृ in दातृ, नेतृ. Exception.—मातृ (fem.) a mother.

[5] Forms abstract feminine nouns; *e.g.*, [illegible] immortality.

Primary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
ಅ	ಅಡಕ
ಇ	ಇರಿ
ಉವ	ಕೊಳೆವು
ಉ	ಕೊಲೆ
ಅಳ	ಅಳತೆ
ಅಕೆ	ಅಳಕೆ
ಅಣ	ಅಳಿಯಣ
ಅಣಿಗೆ	ಅಳಿಯಣಿಗೆ
ಅಣ್ಣ	ಅಳಿಯಣ್ಣ
ಅಣ್ಣು	ಅಳಿಯಣ್ಣು (mas.)
ಅಲ್	ಕೊಲ್ಲ
ಅಲು	ಕೊಲು

[1] Forms, with a few exceptions, a large number of feminine substantives, which denote the action or state expressed by the root; *e. g.*, ಅಡಚುವಿಕೆ, ಅಡಚಣೆ, ಅಡಚಳ. Exceptions.—ಅಡಚು, ಅಡಚಲು, ಅಡಚಣ (mas.). Comp. Sans. ति in स्फूर्ति, आकृति.

[2] ಅಳ, ಅಕೆ.—Mark that ಅಳ is the same as ಅಡ, ಳ, when preceded by ಉ or ಐ is not changed to ಡ, though followed by ಸ, the aspirating letter (*see* p. 23). It mostly forms feminine substantives, which generally denote the instrument or means by which the action expressed by the root is accomplished; *e. g.*, ಅಳತೆ, ಅಡಚು, ಅಡಕ, ಅಡಚಣಿಕೆ, &c. In some instances, it forms masculine and feminine nouns; *e. g.*, ಅಡಚು, ಅಡಕ (mas.); ಅಡಚಿಕೆ, ಅಳತೆ, ಅಡಕೆ (fem.). Comp. Sans. क in केश, पाश (neut.).

[3] In most cases a soft form of ಅಳ.

[4] A soft form of ಇಳ (denoting the agent); sometimes, though rarely, ಇಳ is used; *e. g.*, ಇಳಕ್ಕಿ (fem.) a daughter.

Primary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]

[1] Generally forms neuter substantives; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c. Comp. the Lat. and Sans. suffixes *us*, *men* and मन ; *e. g.*, *opus*, *examen* (Lat.), मन्थन, (neut.)

[2] Forms verbal adjectives. It mostly gunates the radical vowel; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c. Comp. Sans. क in तक्त (rt. तक् to cut).

[3] Generally forms adjectives; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

[4] Forms neuter substantives, which are indeclinable; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

71. List of Ordinary Secondary (or तद्धित) Suffixes.

Secondary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
अ[1]	
इक[2]	
इन्[3]	
इ[4]	
इम[5]	
य[6]	

[1] Mostly forms adjectives and patronymics; sometimes, substantives; e. g., (fr.), pertaining to the tribe; similarly, , , , &c. Patronym.— (fr.), (fr.). Subs.— (fr.); (fr.), &c.

[2] and form possessive adjectives, corresponding to Per. (in ,) and Sax. en (in wooden, silken); e. g., , , , .

[3] Mostly forms patronymics; as, (fr.), (fr.).

[4] Forms, besides substantives and adjectives, patronymics; as, (fr.); (fr.).

[5] A feminine suffix mostly subjoined to consonantal bases which admit of a feminine; e. g., , , , ; (fr.).

Secondary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
-ன்[1]	மலையன்
-தல்[2]	ஆடுதல்
-தி[3]	ஆசிரியத்தி
-மை[4]	நன்மை
-ஆர்[5]	ஆசிரியர்
-ஆன்[6]	மலையாள்+ஆன்
-ஆள்[7]	மலையாள்+ஆள்
-அம்[8]	ஆடுதல்+அம்
-ஆட்டி[9]	மலையாள்+ஆட்டி

[1] Changed to -ள் in the feminine; as, மலையாள், மலையாட்டி, மலையாளம்.

[2] Mostly forms abstract mas. and fem. substantives. When affixed to the pres.-partic. ser., it changes the final கின்ற to க்கை; e.g., ஆடுகின்றான் (orig., ஆடு+கின்றான்); ஆடுகின்றாள் (orig., ஆடு+கின்றாள்); ஆடுகின்றது (orig., ஆடு+கின்றது); ஆடுகின்ற (orig., ஆடு+கின்ற); ஆடுகின்றம் (orig., ஆடு+கின்றம்).

[3] Forms senior substantives which denote the action or state expressed by the noun to which -தி is added; as, ஆசிரியத்தி, மலையாளத்தி, &c.

[4] Forms, besides substantives and adjectives, patronymics, as, தமிழ்மை (fr. தமிழ்); மலையாண்மை (fr. மலையாள்), &c.

[5] As, மலையர் fr. மலை, ஆசிரியர் fr. ஆசிரியன் (Hindi.), மலையாளர் fr. மலையாள்.

[6] Forms possessive adjectives; as, மலையாளன், மலையாளம்

Secondary Suffixes.	*Examples.*
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]
[illegible]	[illegible]

[1] Forms (1) adjectives, meaning 'pertaining or similar to' the noun to which it is affixed; as, [illegible], &c.; (2) patronymics; as, [illegible]; (3) sometimes, substantives; e. g., [illegible]. It generally rejects the final [illegible]; as, [illegible] (fr. [illegible]). In several instances, the radical [illegible] is lengthened; as, [illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]). Sometimes, though rarely, the final [illegible] is retained; e. g., [illegible] (Vâsp. 12, 5), also [illegible] (Yt. 14, 31), also [illegible]. Comp. Sans. [illegible] in [illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]).

[2] Forms patronymics; as, [illegible] (from [illegible]).

[3] An adjectival suffix; e. g., [illegible], &c.

[4] Forms possessive adjectives; as, [illegible]

[5] Generally forms possessive adjectives; e. g., [illegible]

11439

Compound Nominal Bases.

72. [1] Primary and secondary nominal bases, participles, roots, numerals, reflexive pronouns and particles may be compounded with primary and secondary nominal bases, participles and roots: and the compound bases formed in this manner have the power to express various relations, that exist between the objects or ideas denoted by their different members. Those relations would have had to be expressed by two or more inflected words or by subordinate sentences, if the composition had not taken place; e. g., राजन्-पुरुष lord of the country (= राज्ञः पुरुषः राजपुरुषः); कवचि-हस्त having a steel helmet (= कवचं हस्ते यस्य सः कवचिहस्तः).

राजा-च पुरुषश्च राजानौ (राजा च पुरुषश्च in the nominative case; राजानं च पुरुषं च राजानौ in the accusative case).

73. Nominal bases ending in vowels, except आ and ई, when employed as first members, or when they form any but the last member of a compound, take in general no case-terminations, but retain their crude forms unchanged, either a point (.) or a hyphen (-) being placed at the end of each word except the last; e. g., नदी-मातृकः, नदी-पतिः, नदी-मातृकः, नदी-पतिः, नदी-मातृकः, नदी-पतिः, &c. In several instances, final vowels of preceding members of compounds combine with the initial letters of succeeding members according to the rules of *sandhi*: e. g., (orig., +) (orig., +); (orig., +), (orig., +)

[1] This portion of compound nominal bases, from p. 52 to p. 55, is, with some slight variation, taken from Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed.

[illegible] (orig., [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible] (orig. [illegible] + [illegible]).

74. Nouns with changeable bases* generally assume their weak or weakest base: *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] weak base; [illegible] (weakest base).

Exceptions.— [illegible], [illegible] (strong base).

75. Nouns ending in [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] or [illegible] change their base, in most cases, to [illegible]; *e. g.*, [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible], &c.; sometimes, to [illegible] or [illegible]; as, [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible] (but [illegible], [illegible]); [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible]; [illegible] + [illegible] = [illegible] (but [illegible], fr. [illegible] + [illegible]). In several instances, the first member of a compound takes its case-termination; as, [illegible] acc. (orig., [illegible] + [illegible])

---

* For the explanation of this, see the declension of consonantal bases.

[illegible] acc. (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] nom. (orig., [illegible]) [illegible] nom. (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] loc. (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] nom. (orig., [illegible])

76. Feminine adjectives, that qualify a following member in the same compound, generally assume their masculine base; e. g., [illegible].

77. When [illegible] (a bull) becomes the first member of a compound, it is, in several instances, changed to [illegible]; but if followed by a word beginning with [illegible], it is shortened to [illegible]; e. g., [illegible]; but [illegible] (orig., [illegible]).

In some cases [illegible] remains unchanged; e. g., [illegible], [illegible], &c.

78. Nouns employed as last members of compounds generally retain their bases unchanged; as. [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c. But when a feminine noun ending in [illegible], [illegible] or [illegible] forms the last member of a determinative (कर्मधारय) compound, in which the first member governs the second member, or of a relative (बहुव्रीहि) compound, its final vowel is shortened; as. [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) not singing the Gâthâs: [illegible] (orig., [illegible]), a man of ill-intent; [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) a sharp or flashing pointed; [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) dry dust.

79. All compound nominal bases may be divided into four classes, viz.,

1. Determinative (or तत्पुरुष) Compounds.
2. Attributive (or बहुव्रीहि) Compounds.
3. Copulative (or द्वन्द्व) Compounds.
4. Adverbial (or अव्ययीभाव) Compounds.

80. "A **Tatpurusha** (तत्पुरुष) compound may, in general, be described as a compound, which denotes that which is expressed by its second member, determined or qualified by what is expressed by its first member. When the first member of a **Tatpurusha** stands in apposition to the second, so that, if the compound were dissolved, it would have to be expressed by a substantive or adjective agreeing in case with the second member, the **Tatpurusha**-compound is called a **Karmadhāraya**. Again, a **Karmadhāraya**-compound, the first member of which is a cardinal number, is called a **Dvigu**-compound. It will appear, then, that a **Tatpurusha**-compound, to which neither the term Karmadhāraya nor the term Dvigu is applicable, must, in general, be a compound, the first member of which, if the compound were dissolved, would be governed by the second member, and would have to be expressed by a word in an oblique case."* Examples:—

Tatpurusha only:—ગૃહપતિ-[illegible] the master of the house, (orig., ગૃહસ્ય પતિઃ).

Karmadhāraya:—[illegible]-[illegible] a long life.

Dvigu:—[illegible]-[illegible] ten paces; [illegible]-[illegible] nine furrows; [illegible]-[illegible] eight characteristics.

81. "Tatpurusha-compounds in general may be called **Determinative** compounds; those Tatpurusha-compounds which are neither Karmadhāraya nor Dvigu, **Dependent Determinative** compounds. Karmadhāraya-compounds may be called **Appositional Determinative** compounds, and Dvigu-compounds, **Numeral Determinative** compounds."*

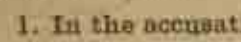
Observation.—A numeral determinative (विगु) compound may also be used as the attribute of a substantive, and may, consequently, become an attributive (बहुव्रीहि) compound; e. g. [illegible]-[illegible] nine feet (num. determ. comp.), [illegible]-[illegible] of

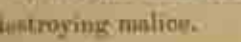
* *Vide* Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed.

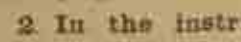
nine feet (attrib. comp.). Compare Sans. त्रिभुवन the three worlds, viz., heaven, earth and the lower regions (numer. determ. comp.); त्रिनेत्र one who has three eyes, a name of Shiva (attrib. comp.).

Dependent Determinative Compounds.

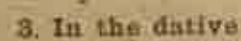
82. The second member is determined or qualified by the first member, which, if the compound were dissolved, would stand—

1. **In the accusative case**; e. g.,  destroying malice.

2. **In the instrumental case**; e. g.,  killed by a wolf.

3. **In the dative case**; e. g.,  the sheds [for the cattle.

4. **In the ablative case**; e. g.,  estranged from the Daêvas. [of the house.

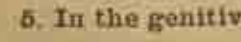
5. **In the genitive case**; e. g.,  the master

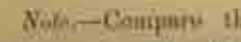
Note.—Compare the Persian compounds خدای خانه, زن خانه, خانه پاک, باورچی خانه.

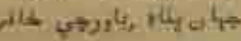
6. **In the locative case**; e. g.,  first (i.e., best) in righteousness.

Compounds of this class consist of—

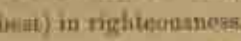
1. **Two substantives**; e. g.,  a horse-stall.

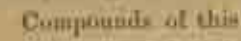
2. **A substantive + an adjective**; e. g.,  wealth-increasing.

3. **A substantive + a present participle**; e. g.,  stepping wife. [killed by a dog.

4. **A substantive + a past participle**; e. g., 

5. **A substantive + a root**; e. g.,  a horse-slayer.

6. **An adjective + a substantive**; e. g.,  every Druj.

7. **A present participle + a substantive**; e. g.,  not singing the Gâthâs.

8. **A past participle+a substantive**; *e. g.*, ತಲೆಹೊತ್ತವನು one who carries a corpse singly.

9. **A root+a substantive**; *e. g.*, ತನ್ನಿಚ್ಛೆಯರಸು the king who rules at his will.

10. **A preposition+a substantive**; *e. g.*, ಕುಡಿಯನೀರು fit for drinking purposes.

11. **A prefix+a substantive**; *e. g.*, ಬರಗಾಲ[1] drought of [water.

12. **An adjective+a root**; *e. g.*, ಒಳ್ಳೆಯವನಕೊಲ್ಲು one who kills a righteous person.

Appositional Determinative (ಕರ್ಮಧಾರಯ) Compounds consist of—

Two substantives; *e. g.*, ಅಥರ್ವನಂತೆ a child like an Atharvan; ಬಾಲಕಪಿ a she-camel; ಬಾಲಕಪಿತನ a she-ass.

An adjective+a substantive; *e. g.*, ಯಥೋಚಿತಾನ್ನ proper or right food.

Observation.—An appositional determinative (ಕರ್ಮಧಾರಯ) compound may also be used as the attribute of a substantive, and may, consequently, become an attributive (ಅನ್ವರ್ಥಿ) compound; *e. g.*, ದೀರ್ಘಬಾಹುವಾದ a long arm (appos. determ. comp.); ದೀರ್ಘಬಾಹುವುಳ್ಳ having long arms (attrib. comp.). Compare Sans. **महाबाहु**, a great arm (appos. determ. comp.); **महाबाहु**, having a great arm (attrib. comp.).

Two adjectives; *e. g.* ಅಗಲವಾದಹರಿವ wide-flowing.

An adjective+a present participle; *e. g.*, ಬಲ್ಲಿದರಿಂದೆಸೆವ crying out loudly.

---

[1] Originally, ಬರು +ವು+ಅಲ್; ವು being euphonically inserted (as ವ್ in ಬಂದೆ).

[2] Originally, ಪೇಳ್ದಂತೆ+ಇರ್ದ; ಪೇಳ್ದಂತೆ=ಪೇಳ್ದಂತೆ speaking, ಪೇಳ್ದ to speak.

An adjective + a past participle; *e. g.*, ꦮꦫꦶꦱꦤ꧀ꦠꦺꦴꦏꦤ꧀ rightly spoken.

An adjective + a numeral; *e. g.*, ꦮꦫꦸꦱꦫꦠꦸ many hundreds.

An adjective + a root; *e. g.*, ꦱꦸꦏꦫꦏꦂꦪ doing [good actions.

A present participle + a substantive; *e. g.*, ꦔꦸꦫꦸꦩꦪꦸꦏ꧀ ꦲꦭꦺꦴ making the trees grow up.

An adverb + a substantive; *e. g.*, ꦮꦸꦢꦸꦩꦤꦶꦪꦤ꧀ over in [flame.

A reflexive pronoun + a substantive; *e. g.*, ꦏꦺꦩꦺꦴ ꦢꦺꦴꦩꦱꦭꦩꦠ one's own carpet.

An interrogative pronoun + a substantive; *e. g.*, ꦱꦥꦲꦭꦺꦴ what a woman (lit.), *i.e.*, a bad woman. Compare Sans. किंनर a bad man.

A numeral + a past participle; *e. g.*, ꦮꦺꦴꦭꦸꦁꦏꦺꦴꦠꦶ [the only-created.

A prefix + a substantive; *e. g.*, ꦲꦱꦺꦴꦢꦶꦠꦺꦴꦏꦤ꧀ the evil eye.

A prefix + a past participle; *e. g.*, ꦮꦺꦴꦱꦺꦴꦩꦤ꧀ well-protected.

Observation.—In some Karmadhâraya compounds the qualifying member takes the second place; *e. g.*, ꦱꦸꦤꦶꦪꦫꦺꦴꦠ the shining sky (lit.); name of a person (Compare ꦲꦩꦺꦴꦏꦲꦶꦁꦱꦺꦴꦏ Vocd. 19, 35); ꦲꦭꦺꦴ-ꦲꦶꦁꦱꦺꦴꦏ. Comp. Sans. नरव्याघ्र a tiger-like man.

83. "An attributive (बहुव्रीहि) compound is one which denotes something else than what is expressed by its members. It generally attributes that which is expressed by its second member, determined or qualified by what is denoted by its first member, to something denoted by neither of its members. When dissolved, it must be expressed by more than two inflected words, *viz.*, by the two words which are its members, generally standing both in the nominative case, and by a relative or demonstrative pronoun in any case except the nominative. A Bahuvrihi-compound has

the nature of an adjective and assumes the gender of the word which expresses that of which the Bahuvrîhi-compound forms an attributive."[1] Examples.

ईश्वरसत्त्वा creatures or things which have the seed of sanctity; दृढायुध one who has weapons of steel; नरराक्षसा (demons who ran) in human shape.

Note.—Compare the Persian compounds زرد گوش, بیلتن, ماه روی

Attributive (कर्मधारय) compounds consist of—

Two substantives; *e. g.*, तमोरात्री the offspring (or born) of darkness. [having yellow ears.

An adjective + a substantive; *e. g.*, पीतकर्णा

Note.—Compare the Persian compounds پاک دامن, تنگ دست, تیز گام, گران بها, &c.

A substantive + an adjective; *e. g.*, पुरुषव्याघ्र desirous of purity. [self-shod.

A reflexive pronoun + a substantive; *e. g.*, स्वयम्भू

A numeral + a substantive; *e. g.*, नवग्रन्थि having nine knots. [shapen.

A preposition + a substantive; *e. g.*, सुकृत well-

A prefix + a substantive; *e. g.*, सुपाणि well-armed; निष्पाप sleepless.

A present participle + a substantive; *e. g.*, हयहेषा with snorting horses.

A past participle + a substantive; *e. g.*, उद्यतकेतना with the banners uplifted.

84. A Copulative (द्वन्द्व) compound is one which consists of two nouns, the second member of which takes the dual form, while its first member, as in all compounds, retains the crude base. If the compound were dissolved, its members would have to be expressed

[1] Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Edition, pp. 250-251.

in the singular number with the particle 𐬬𐬀 (and) at the end of each word; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬬𐬀 (nom. and acc. dual) heart and soul; (if dissolved, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬬𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 nom.; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌 𐬬𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌 acc.).

85. But if these two nouns are not compounded, and if the connecting particle 𐬬𐬀 (and) be dropped, they both take the dual form; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌 Khurdâd and Amerdâd; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 Mithra and Ahura; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 the pupil and his master; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 waters and trees.

86. Further, in the case of the union of two or more nouns without being connected by the particle 𐬬𐬀, each of the nouns takes optionally the dual or the plural form. Examples.

Dual.— 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 (Y. 57, 28); 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 (Yt. 10, 119).

Plural.— 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 (Visp. 10, 1). 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 (Frag. III., 1).

87. When two plural nouns connected by 𐬬𐬀 are compounded, the first noun rejects both the plural termination and the connecting particle, and the second noun, the particle 𐬬𐬀 only; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 (orig., 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬬𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀) lands and fields (Yt. 3, 42.)

88. An adverbial (अव्ययीभाव) compound consists of two members, the first of which is a preposition or an adverb, and the second a noun, mostly in the accusative case. If the compound, which is indeclinable, be dissolved, the first member would govern the second. Examples.—[illegible] round the country; [illegible] with child; [illegible] knowingly.

89. Compounds may be compounded again with other simple or compound words; *e. g.*, [illegible]; [illegible].

In Avesta, most compounds are of two words; of three, there are a few, but of four, a fewer still.

Chapter III.

Declension of Nouns Substantive and Adjective.

90. The declension of adjectives does not, in general, differ from that of substantives. Nouns substantive and adjective have three genders, *viz.*, masculine, feminine and neuter. Adjectives assume the gender of the substantives which they qualify. Declension consists in the addition to the nominal base of certain terminations, which denote the various cases in the different numbers.

Note.—A few substantives are indeclinable; as, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

91. Nouns substantive and adjective have three numbers, *viz.*, singular, dual and plural.

There are eight cases in each number, *viz.*, Nominative (Nom.), Accusative (Acc.), Instrumental (Instr.), signifying 'by, with, by means of'; Dative (Dat.), 'to, for'; Ablative (Abl.), 'away from, from'; Genitive (Gen.), 'of'; Locative (Loc.), 'in, into, at, towards'; Vocative (Voc.), in which a person or thing is addressed.

92. Table of Case-Terminations added to nominal bases.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	[1] स, [1] औ ।: (*i.e.*, र)	[2] ऽ औ	ः (*i.e.*, अस्) अस[3]
Acc.	म्, [4] ऍ अम्	[2] ऽ औ	ः (*i.e.*, अस) अस[3]

[1] After bases ending in ऽ or ऽ, स is added as the termination of the nom. sing.; in all the remaining bases, श is used; *e. g.*, अश्वस, वायस, अग्निस, अश्, &c.

[2] Sometimes, in nominal bases ending in ऽ and ऽ, ष is substituted for ऽ; as, अग्निषौ, अग्निषुकरण, अग्षु, &c. Bases ending in ऽ and ऽ form their nominative and accusative dual either by retaining or lengthening their final without adding any termination; as, अग्निपुराणौ, अग्निपुराणी, अग्निपुराणि, द्वारौ, ऽ (ऽ) two fingers.

[3] The original case-termination is अङ्ग or अङ, which is rare; as, अग्निमीळे (=अङ्ग + अग्निमीळ); similarly, अङ्ग अग्नि, अग्निमीळाय, अग्निमीळात्, &c. अस in its shortened forms becomes अः, आ, ऽ, which are commonly met with; as, देवाः (=देवास + अः), देवाः अग्निं (=देवास + अग्निं), अग्निना (=ऽ + अग्निना), &c. In the Gâthâ dialect we sometimes meet with अङ्ग, अङ, अ, instead of अस, आ or ऽ; as, अङ्ग अग्निं, अग्निमीळाय, अग्निमीळात्.

[4] Vowel bases add ं, and consonantal bases, ऍ; as, ऍग्निम् (=ऍ + अग्निम्), ऍग्निपुराणम् (ऍ + अग्निपुराणम्), &c.

Instr.	ా	ా	ాభ్యాం	ాభిః (*i.e.*, భిస్)
Dat.	ై	ే	ాభ్యాం	ేభ్యః (*i.e.*, భ్యస్)
Abl.	ఃయ	అః (*i.e.*, అస్)	ాభ్యాం	ేభ్యః (*i.e.*, భ్యస్)
Gen.	స	అః (*i.e.*, అస్)	ఃయోః (*i.e.*, ఓస్)	ాం
Loc.	ి[1]	ే	ఎఅ ఓఃస్)	{ ఎ, ాసు[2] / ఇ ఎఅ, ాసు
Voc. crude form[3], or same as nom. sing.		same as nom. dual,		same as nom. plu.[4]

[1] In some cases, ి, ాఇ or ాఇ is substituted for ి; e.g., ిఅరాత్, ాఇఅిరాత్, ాఇఅిరాత్.

[2] Nominal bases ending in vowels sometimes take the termination ఎసు or ఎఇఅ; as, ఎఇఅరాఇ instr. dual; ఎఇఅరాఇఅిరాత్ dat. dual; ఎసుఇఅిరాత్ abl. dual; ిసుసు (an eye-brow) forms its dat. dual ిఇసుసు. Compare Sanskrit ఖాన్ (in అగ్ని-ఖాన్, గుహ-ఖాన్, &c.).

[3] Occasionally, ేభ్యస్ is changed to ేసుసు or ేభ్యఇ; as, ఎఇఅ ేసుసుత్, ేభ్యఇరాత్ [ాఇఅిరాత్

[4] Sometimes, though seldom, ాసు; as, ాసుసుత్, ాసుసుిరాత్,

[5] ఎ or ాసు is used after ా, ా and ే; in all other cases it is changed to ాఇ or ాసుఇ; as, ాసుఇఅిరాత్, ఎఇఅాసుఇ, ాసుఇేభ్యస్; but, ఎఇఅిరాత్, ఎఇఅిరాత్, ాసుఇిరాత్ ాఇఅిరాత్, ాఇ ఎఇఅిరాత్

[6] Some feminine nouns ending in ా or ఇ form their voc. sing. in ఎ; as, ఎఇసుసుసు (fr. ాఇసుసుసు), ఎఇఅరాఇ (fr. ఇఅరాఇ). A few nouns ending in consonants have their voc. sing. same as the nom. sing.; as, ాఇసుసుసుత్ (fr. ఎఇసుసుసుత్), ఎఇసుసు (fr. ిసుసు); ఎఇఅరాత్, ఎఇఅిరాత్ ేభ్యస్, &c.

93. The above case-terminations undergo various changes, especially when added to bases ending in vowels; these changes are best learnt from the paradigms given under the various declensions. Terminations beginning with vowels may, for convenience sake, be called **vowel-terminations**, terminations beginning with consonants, **consonantal-terminations**.

According to the final letter of the base, the Declension of nouns substantive and adjective is divided into—

(1) Declension of bases ending in vowels or Declension of **vowel-bases**; and

(2) Declension of bases ending in consonants or Declension of **consonantal bases**.

☞ It should be noted that all the inflected forms of nouns, given in the following paradigms, are not actually found in the sacred writings. The Avesta literature being very limited, the student will meet with some particular inflected forms of one noun; while the complement is supplied from some other noun of the same base. These paradigms will help the student in remembering the rules. The examples of the inflected forms of nouns given below the paradigms are such as are *actually* met with in Avesta. Though the regular forms of inflected nouns are numerous and frequent, the variations from the prescribed rules are not few, as will be seen from the examples.

Declension of crude bases ending in vowels.

94. *Bases ending in* -ă- *Masculine.*

Remarks.—In the nom. sing., the final of the base unites with the case-termination to ē, except when followed by -cha or -chā. The abl. sing. optionally takes -ād, and before the enclitic particle -cha, -chā, instead of the termination. In the gen. sing., -ō is substituted for -ahe. The gen. du. inserts -ō- before the termination. The loc. du. substitutes -ē for -ayō. The nom. and acc. plu. generally take the terminations -ē

[1] The crude form is generally used in the case of nominal bases ending in -a; as, -vīspaēibya -vīspaēibyō, -vīspaēibyascā, -vīspaēibyascāscā, &c.

and ಃ, respectively, instead of ಱ. These (viz., ದೇವಱ and ಃ), being coalesced with the preceding vowel, become ದೇವಸ್ and ಸ್. In some cases, the acc. plu. ends in ಱಸ್ or ಸ್. The crude base itself is often used for the nom. and acc. plu. The instr. plu. substitutes ಱಃ[1] for ಱಿ. The terminations ಱಿನ್, ದೆನ್ and ನ (ಱಿನ) insert ಗ before them. The gen. plu. substitutes, in most cases, ಕ್ಕಳ್ for ಕ್.

☞ It should be remembered that crude nominal bases ending in ಱ are either masculine or neuter, except those ending in the secondary suffix ಱಪ; e. g., ಱಳಿಯಱಪ, ಱಳಱಪಱಪಱಪ, ಱಳಱಪಱಪಱಪಱಪ, &c. These are either masculine or feminine.

CAUTION.—When final letters of nominal crude bases come in contact with initial letters of case-terminations, the rules of euphonic changes (*sandhi*) must be observed.

95. ಮಕ್ಕಳ (a son)—MASCULINE.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	ಮಕ್ಕಳ[1]	ಮಕ್ಕಳು	ಮಕ್ಕಳಱು ಮಕ್ಕಳು
Acc.	ಮಕ್ಕಳ	ಮಕ್ಕಳು	ಮಕ್ಕಳ ಮಕ್ಕಳು
Instr.	ಮಕ್ಕಳಿಂ	ಮಕ್ಕಳಱಿರ್ವರ್	ಮಕ್ಕಳಿಂದಂ

[1] Compare ದೇವಱ with Vedic ಅಸಸ್; *e. g.*, ದೇವಾಸಸ = ದೇವಱಿಱಿಱ

[2] Compare Vedic ಭಿಸ್; *e. g.*, ನದೀಭಿಸ್ (from ನದೀ a river).

[3] But when followed by the enclitic particle ಱಪ or ಬಾರ, ಱಪಮಕ್ಕಳ, ಬಾರಮಕ್ಕಳ.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Dat.			
Abl.			
Gen.			
Loc.			
Voc.			

96. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—, , , , , &c.

Nom. and Acc. Dual—, , , , (Gâthaic) two hosts. It should be noted that Avestaic words, except monosyllabics (such as , ,), never end in the long vowels —; on the contrary, the final vowels, in the Gâthâ dialect, are invariably long.

Nom. Plu.—, , , , , , , , , , , (base), , ; , , , (base). Mark , Yt. 8, 18.

---

[1] But when followed by the enclitic particle or ,

Acc. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], &c. Besides the final [illegible] changing its preceding [illegible] to [illegible], [illegible] (GMH.), the accusative singular of nominal bases ending in [illegible] also terminates in [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; *e. g.*, [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible], also [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible], also [illegible], [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); similarly, [illegible], also [illegible] Geld. Yt. 15, 31; [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); also, [illegible] Geld. Yt. 8, 28; [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]); [illegible] (= [illegible] + [illegible]). For particulars, see pp. 28-30.

Acc. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]; [illegible]. Sometimes, though rarely, the acc. plu. ends in [illegible]; *e. g.*, [illegible] Visp. 19, 1; [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] Yaç. 19, 2.

Mark [illegible] ([illegible]) acc. plu. Yaç. 12, 1.

Instr. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Instr. Du.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

(also Geld. Yt. 16. 7).

Instr. Plu.—, (base an ear); with (their) offensive doctrines. Mark *Note.*—Some Vedic nouns in have instead of (Benfey).

Dat. Sing.— Visp. 15, 2.

Dat. Du.—

Dat. Plu.—

Abl. Sing.—;

Abl. Du.—

Abl. Plu.—

Gen. Sing.—(r.—). ; euphonically changes its preceding to ; e. g., &c. In the Gâthâ dialect, or is generally substituted for ; e. g.,

Gen. Du.—[illegible]

Gen. Plu.—[illegible], also,

Loc. Sing.—[illegible], also Geld.; fr. [illegible]; [illegible]. It should be remembered that [illegible] at the end of a word is always shortened to [illegible], except when followed by the enclitic particle [illegible] or [illegible]; e. g., [illegible]. Sometimes, especially in the Gâthâ dialect, the final [illegible] is changed to [illegible]; e. g., [illegible]. In some cases, [illegible] is substituted for [illegible] in the loc. sing.; e. g., [illegible] Sometimes, though rarely, the final of the base is dropped before [illegible]; e. g., [illegible], (also [illegible], fr. [illegible]); [illegible], (also [illegible], fr. [illegible]; [illegible] in the same place).

Loc. Du.—[illegible] Geld. Y. 44, 14; [illegible]

Loc. Plu.—[illegible], (Geld.; on the backs); [illegible], [illegible] (base [illegible]); [illegible] (Yt. 10, 40.) on the heads.

Voc. Sing.—अहुरा, मज्दा, मज्दाओ-दाद्रे अहुरे, मज्दाओ-दाद्रे, मज्दाओ-दाद्रे; द्वारस्मन्दारे Y. 71, 1 (fr. मज्दाओ-दाद्रे compara. adj.); द्वारस्मन्दारे (अहुरे दाद्रे) Y. 46, 10. (O Mazda, Thou) most wise!

Voc. Du.—अहुरा मज्दा मज्दाओ-दाद्रे (Justi) Visp. 12, 3.

Voc. Plu.—द्वारस्मन्दारो, अहुरास्, मज्दाओ-दाद्रो, मज्दाओ-दाद्रो मज्दाओ-दाद्रो; मज्दाओ-दाद्रो मज्दाओ-दाद्रो; द्वारस्मन्दारो

97. The feminine base of adjectives ending in -अ, and of substantives in -अ, which admit of a feminine, is most commonly formed by the addition of the feminine suffix -आ to the masculine base; e. g., वेरेन (mas.) dear; fem., वेरेनआ; हाओस्रव (mas.) a grandfather; fem., हाओस्रवआ; मएरेन्दव (mas.) an uncle; fem., मएरेन्दवआ; वेरेन (mas. or neut.) beautiful; fem., वेरेनआ; मज्दाओ-दाद्र (mas. or neut.) strong; fem., मज्दाओ-दाद्रआ, &c. But in several instances, the feminine base is formed by substituting the feminine suffix -ई for the final -अ; e. g., दएवअ (mas.) a Dev; fem., दएवई; पएरव (mas. or neut.) first; fem., पएरवी

98. Bases ending in the Secondary Suffix -वन्-Masculine and Feminine.

These are mostly abstract substantives; their inflected forms as found in Avesta are given below:—

Nom. Sing.—मज्दाओ-दाद्रो (Geld. note) Visp. 12, 1.

Acc. Sing.—द्वारस्मन्दारे (fem.); मज्दाओ-दाद्रे (mas.).

Instr. Sing.—मज्दाओ-दाद्रा, मज्दाओ-दाद्रा, मज्दाओ-दाद्रा, मज्दाओ-दाद्रा, मज्दाओ-दाद्रा

Dat. Sing.—मज्दाओ-दाद्रे

Gen. Sing.—मज्दाओ-दाद्रो

Nom. Du.—𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (fem.) two mountains.

Gen. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀

Loc. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀

99. Bases ending in -- —Neuter.

Note.—The declension of the masculine and neuter nouns of the same base differs in the nominative and accusative only [1]; while all the other cases are alike.

Remarks.—The neuters ending in -- affix 𐬌 in the nom. and acc. sing. To the nom. and acc. dual and plural, no case-termination is affixed, only the crude form being used. The remaining cases are like those of the mas. of the same base.

𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (truthfulness)—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀	𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀	𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀
Acc.	𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀	𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀	𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀

☞ The rest of the cases follow the analogy of 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 (mas.).

100. Other inflected forms of the same base:—

Nom. and Acc. Sing.—𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, -𐬎𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (Gâth.), 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (fr. 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀), 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (fr. 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀)

Nom. and Acc. Du.—𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀; 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 Westerg., 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 Geld. Yt. 19, 32.

Nom. and Acc. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀.

---

[1] The same rule holds good in Sanskrit and Latin; as, Sans. नाम, नामन्; Lat. Regnum, Opus (nom. and acc. sing.).

101. Bases ending in —Feminine.

Note.—Crude bases ending in — are, in most cases, feminine.

REMARKS.—In the nom. and voc. sing., the final — is changed to —, sometimes, to —, and no termination is added. In the instr., dat., abl. and gen. sing., the final — is shortened, and — is inserted before the case-termination. The loc. sing. is formed either by shortening or dropping the final vowel and substituting — for the termination. Before the termination of the gen. plu., the final of the base is shortened, and — is substituted, in most cases, for —. The nom. and acc. du. optionally take — for —.

102. — (an instrument)—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	— / —	— / —	— / —
Acc.	—	— / —	— / —
Instr.	—	—	—
Dat.	—	—	—
Abl.	—	—	—
Gen.	—	.....	—
Loc.	— / —	.....	—
Voc.	— / —	—	— / —

103. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base :—

Nom. Sing.—, , , , , (Geld. Yt. 16, 3); , , (fr.), , (from), , Yt. 13, 99.

Nom. Du.—, ,

Nom. and Acc. Plu.—, , , (also, Geld. Gâh. 4, 9.), &c. is a phonetic change of at the end of words; always takes a redundant after it, when followed by the enclitic particle or ; *e. g.*, , , , (Geld. Gâh. 4, 10). Mark Wester., Geld. (Yt. 17, 10.) sweethearts.

Acc. Sing. , , , , , , , Yt. 12, 17; .

Acc. Du.—, , , , , ,

Instr. Sing.—, , , , . Sometimes, is not inserted; as, , (also,). , , Geld. Yaç. 11, 18. (Nota.—Some Vedic feminines in also do not insert ; as, instead of —Bopp).

Instr. Du.—,

Instr. Plu.—

Dat. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. Y. 9, 4, 7. 9. 12; [illegible] Geld. Ys. 4, 3 (for [illegible]); [illegible]

Dat. Du.—[illegible].

Dat. Plu.—[illegible]. Sometimes, [illegible] is substituted for [illegible], as, [illegible]

Abl. Sing.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible] Aurora) [illegible] (also, [illegible]), [illegible]

Abl. Plu.—[illegible]

Gen. Sing.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible]; fem. of [illegible]); [illegible] Geld.; [illegible] (for [illegible]), [illegible] (for [illegible]) Y. 43, 13; [illegible]; also, [illegible] Geld. Yaç. 9, 18.

Gen. Plu.—[illegible] (from [illegible]); [illegible] (=[illegible]+[illegible]) Vend. 6, 21; [illegible]

Loc. Sing.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (Ys. 5, 73); [illegible] (Vend. 6, 29).

Loc. Plu.—[illegible]

Voc. Sing.—[illegible]

Voc. Plu.—[illegible]

Bases ending in —Masculine.

104. Masculine nouns ending in — are very few, and, for the most part, compounds, the second member of which is the verbal root ; as, , , , , , , &c.

REMARK.—The nom. and acc. plu. substitute and , respectively, for the case-termination. In the voc. sing., the final — is shortened. The gen. plu. shortens the final of the base and substitutes for .

105. (All-knowing); (Evil-knowing)—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.		
Acc. (Vt. 5, 32).		
Instr.		
Dat.		
Abl.		

[1] As, (V. 12, 5).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Loc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Voc.	[illegible]	[illegible]

106. Other inflected forms of the same base :—

Nom. Sing.—[illegible]

Nom. Plu.—[illegible]

Acc. Sing.—[illegible]

Acc. Plu.—[illegible]

Dat. Sing.—[illegible]; also, [illegible] Vend. 14, 9.

Dat. Plu.—[illegible]

Gen. Sing.—[illegible]

Gen. Plu.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible]) Y. 61, 3.

Voc. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. Y. 8, 5; Y. 52, 5; also [illegible]

Voc. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 65, 12.

107. Bases ending in ˀ Masculine and Feminine :—

Remarks.—The instr. sing. retains the crude form. In the dat. sing., the final of the base is guṇated (*i.e.*, changed to its guṇa equivalent) before the termination. The abl. and gen. sing.,

ˀ As, [illegible] (Y. 30, 9; Y. 31. 4).

after changing the final ར to ས, substitute ད and ས for དས and ཏས, respectively. The loc. sing. forms are rare; the final ར is changed to ར or ེ and no termination is affixed. In the voc. sing., the vowel of the base is, in most cases, changed to ོ. The nom. and acc. dual retain only the crude form. In the nom. and acc. plu., the final vowel is guṇated before the termination. The acc. plu. is, in several cases, formed by affixing ཤ instead of the termination. The gen. plu. mostly substitutes ཀྱི for ཀྱ.

108. རིགས (a mountain)—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	རིགས་	རིགས	རིགས་ཏེ རིགས་ཏེ
Acc.	རིགས་ཏེ	རིགས	རིགས་ཏེ རིགས་ཏམས་ རིགས་ཤ
Instr.	རིགས	རིགས་ཏམ	རིགས་ཏེ
Dat.	རིགས་ཀྱི རིགས་ཏམས་	རིགས་ཏམ	རིགས་ཏེ
Abl.	རིགས་ཀྱི	རིགས་ཏམ	རིགས་ཏེ
Gen.	རིགས་ཀྱི	.....	རིགས་ཀྱི
Loc.	རིགས	.....	རིགས་ཏེ
Voc.	རིགས རིགས་ཀ	.....	རིགས་ཏེ

109. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—རིགས་ཏེ, རིགས་ཏེ་ཡི, རིགས་ཏེ་ཏེ, རིགས་ཏེ་ཏེ, རིགས་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ Yt. 10, 78. རིགས་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ་ཏེ

Yt. 16,19. (for) V. 44, 9. ,
, Gold. Yt. 1, 14.

Nom. and Acc. Du.—,

Nom. Plu.—, , , ,
, ,

Acc. Sing.—; (the final is guṇated); (the final is vṛiddhied) a good companion, Y. 46, 13.

Acc. Plu.—, , , ,
, , , , , also, ; (Y. 10, 11); , (Gold. Yt. 8, 46), lakes. Sometimes, though seldom, the acc. plu. subjoins , (Gâth.) to the base; e.g. , (fr. a bone).

Instr. Sing.—,

Instr. Du.—

Dat. Sing.—, at the end of a word, is a phonetic change of , which, before the enclitic particle or , retains its original form. , , , . Mark (fr. the master) Y. 53, 4.

Gen. Sing.—, , , , (for), (Gold. Yt. 14, 2).

Gen. Plu.—; (fr.); (from); (fr.).

Loc. Sing.—[illegible] (from [illegible]); [illegible] (Y. 62, 2; [illegible])

Voc. Sing.—[illegible]

Voc. Plu.—[illegible]

110. [illegible] (Farohar)—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible]
Instr.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Abl.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible] [illegible] Yt. 2, 15.
Loc.	.....	.....
Voc.	[illegible] [illegible]	[illegible]

111. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—[illegible] Gold. Yt. 1, 0.

Nom. Plu.—[illegible]

Acc. Sing.—[illegible]

Acc. Du.—[illegible] twice nine=18.

Acc. Plu.—[illegible] (Khor. Nyâ. 1); [illegible] (Yt. 10, 72). [illegible] (Wester.), [illegible]

Instr. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. (Y. 55, 4). [illegible]

Dat. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 23, 3. [illegible] Y. 64, 14 (ī being dropped); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] Geld. (fr. [illegible]); [illegible]

Dat. Du.—[illegible]

Abl. Sing.—[illegible]; [illegible] (from [illegible] love, peace).

Abl. Plu.—[illegible] from the abodes.

Gen. Sing.—[illegible] (Vend. 20, 3); [illegible] (Y. 32, 3); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]).

Gen. Plu.—[illegible]

Loc. Sing.—[illegible]

𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨, 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬨, 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎, -𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀
𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨 (Y. 31, 8) in the creation. (Rev. Dr. Mills).

Voc. Sing.—𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬨, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀

112. Bases ending in ~—Neuter.

Remarks.—Neuter nouns ending in ~ retain the crude form, in the nom. and acc. sing., dual and plural, without adding any termination. The final vowel is sometimes lengthened in the dual. The rest of the cases are like the mas. of the same base.

Note.—The same rule holds good with regard to neuter nouns ending in ~.

𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌 (light)—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌
Acc.	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌

☞ The rest of the cases follow the analogy of 𐬀𐬵𐬵𐬀 (mas.).

113. Other inflected forms of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬉𐬎, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 (Sans. घृत).

Acc. Sing.—𐬉𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀

Acc. Du.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬉𐬎𐬀 both eyes.

Acc. Plu.—𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 (in 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀 Yaç. 57, 4); 𐬀𐬵𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨 Yt. 5, 130; Yt. 17, 7 𐬀𐬵𐬵𐬀 Yt. 24, 55.

114. Bases ending in ~—Feminine.

Remarks.—The nom. sing. shortens the final ~ without adding any termination. In the dat., abl. and gen. singular, the vowel of the termination is lengthened. In the nom. and acc. plu.,

either the final ह is changed to its guṇa equivalent before the termination, or the termination ष्वस्, instead of वस्, is affixed to the base. Sometimes, the nom. and acc. plu. are formed by affixing उ to the base. The instr., dat., abl. and loc. plu. shorten the final ह before the termination. The gen. plu., shortening the final vowel, substitutes ईनाम् for नाम्.

115. दस्यु (a Devi)—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	दस्युः दस्यूः	दस्यवः दस्यूस् दस्यूः
Acc.	दस्युम्	दस्यूस् दस्यूः
Instr.	दस्युना	दस्युभिः
Dat.	दस्यवे	दस्युभ्यः
Abl.	दस्योस्	दस्युभ्यः
Gen.	दस्योस्*	दस्यूनाम्
Loc.	.....	दस्युषु
Voc.	दस्यो दस्यूः	.....

116. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing. —ऽस्यवः, ऽस्यवे, ऽस्यवाऽस्यूनाम्, ऽस्युना, ऽस्वः, ऽस्युषु, ऽस्युभिः, ऽस्युभ्यः, ऽस्युभ्यः, ऽस्यूनाम्, ऽस्यौ, ऽस्युषु Geld. Y. 88. 4; ऽस्यवः, ऽस्यवस्, ऽस्यूस्, ऽस्यूः, ऽस्यवः, ऽस्यूनाम्

* Mark दस्यूनाम् Vaj. 57, 15.

Nom. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Acc. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] Wester. Yt. 16, 1; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Acc. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (from [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (fr. [illegible] a maid); [illegible] (male-mated); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Instr. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Instr. Plu.—[illegible] [illegible]

Dat. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (fr. [illegible])

Dat. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Abl. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (Geld. [illegible] Yt. 13, 71).

Abl. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible]

Gen. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (Geld. [illegible] [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible],

𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 (Geld. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, fr. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀);
𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌-𐬱𐬀 𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌,
𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 (fr. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌)

Gen. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌,
𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 Yt. 13, 91. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌,
𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 Geld. Visp. 11, 14.

Loc. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 (fr. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌) Yt. 5, 54.

Loc. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌

Voc. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌,
𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌

Voc. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 (see Y. 8, 3);
𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 (see Y. 68, 12).

117. Bases ending in ɔ—Masculine and Feminine.

Remarks.—The instr. sing. generally retains the crude form. In the dat. sing., the final vowel is changed to its guṇa equivalent before the termination. The abl. and gen. sing., after changing the final ɔ to 𐬵, substitute 𐬉 and 𐬌 for 𐬀 and 𐬌, respectively.[1] Occasionally, the gen., loc. and voc. sing. take 𐬎[2] instead of the termination. Sometimes, the loc. du. substitutes 𐬎 for 𐬌𐬵. The nom. and acc. dual either retain the final ɔ or lengthen it without any termination. In the nom. and acc. plu., the final vowel is changed to its guṇa equivalent before the ter-

[1] Sometimes, the gen. sing. changes the final vowel to its vṛiddhi equivalent before affixing 𐬌; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌

[2] Sometimes, though rarely, the voc. sing. rejects the final ɔ before 𐬎; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 (fr. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌)

mination; sometimes, ꣀ is affixed after lengthening the final vowel. The gen. plu. optionally substitutes ꣁ for ꣀ.

118. ꣈ꣀ꣉ (the world)—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	꣈ꣀ꣉	꣈ꣀ꣉	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣀ
Acc.	꣈ꣀ꣉	꣈ꣀ꣉	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣀ ꣈ꣀ꣉
Instr.	꣈ꣀ꣉	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣁ	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣂ
Dat.	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣄ ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣅ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣆ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇	꣈ꣀ꣉꣈ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣈	꣈ꣀ꣉꣈
Abl.	꣈ꣀ꣉꣉	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣁ	꣈ꣀ꣉꣈
Gen.	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣂ	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ	꣈ꣀ꣉꣄ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣄
Loc.	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣀ ꣈ꣀ꣉ ꣈ꣀ꣉ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣈	꣈ꣀ꣉ꣅ ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣀ	꣈ꣀ꣉꣆
Voc.	.....	.....	.....

119. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ, ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ, ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇, also ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇ ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇ Gold. Y. 31, 9. ꣈ꣀ꣉, ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ, ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇, ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇, ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇, ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇ (Gold. ꣈ꣀ꣉ꣃ); ꣈ꣀ꣉꣇, ꣈ꣀ꣉꣈

Nom. Du.—[illegible] Geld. (Yt. 5, 7; Yt. 10, 104).

Nom. Plu.—[illegible] Geld. Yt. 15, 56 (for [illegible])

Acc. Sing.—[illegible] Yt. 5, 127; [illegible] Geld. Yt. 5, 77.

Acc. Du.—[illegible]

Acc. Plu.—[illegible] Yt. 17, 13 (burden-bearing); [illegible] (for [illegible]); [illegible] also, [illegible]

Instr. Sing.—[illegible] also, [illegible] Y. 51, 13.

Instr. Du.—[illegible]

Instr. Plu.—[illegible]. Mark [illegible] Geld. (Yas. 44, 2. 16) meaning 'for both the worlds-lives.'

Dat. Sing.—[illegible] (ś being euphonically inserted).

Dat. Plu.—[illegible]

Abl. Sing.—[illegible] Geld., [illegible] Wester. Yt. 8, 32; (fr. [illegible])

Abl. Plu.—[illegible]

Gen. Sing.—[illegible] (Geld.), [illegible] Geld. Yt. 14, 11; [illegible] Geld.; [illegible]

Gen. Du.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] Geld. Yt. 15, 115.

Gen. Plu.—[illegible]

Loc. Sing.—[illegible] (Y. 62, 6); [illegible] Wester. Y. 30, 10; [illegible] (Visp. 14, 2); [illegible] (the final ɔ being dropped); [illegible] Y. 48, 4 (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] Y. 65, 9.

Loc. Du.—[illegible] is used for both the loc. sing. and the loc. dual (see Vend. 19, 27; Y. 41, 3).

Loc. Plu.—[illegible]. Mark [illegible] Y. 61, 9 (fr. [illegible], the world).

Voc. Sing.—[illegible] Yt. 10, 115; [illegible] Y. 10, 2; [illegible]

Yt. 13, 7. Mark (Yt. 10, 126) in the nom. sing.

Voc. Plu.—

120. The feminine base of adjectives ending in › is generally formed by the addition of the feminine suffix to the masculine base; e. g., (mas.) good; fem. or (and › being interchanged); (mas.) broad; fem. (› being euphonically changed to).

121. Bases ending in ›—Neuter.

The declension of neuter nouns ending in › follows the analogy in ; see p. 81, para. 112.

(wood, timber)—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.			
Acc.			

☞ The rest of the cases follow the analogy of (mas.).

122. Other inflected forms of the same base:—

Nom. and Acc. Sing.—, , , , , , , Geld. Yt. 10, 55. Mark Geld. Yt. 17, 6.

Nom. Plu.— Geld., Geld., Vispar. 11, 5; Geld. Y. 8, 5; Yt. 5, 130; Yt. 17, 7.

123. (the body)—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.		

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Acc.		
	(Gâth.)	
Instr.		
Dat.		
Abl.		
Gen.		
Loc.		
Voc.		

124. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—

Nom. Pln.— (Geld. Y. 9, 23).

Acc. Sing.—

Acc. Dual.— (Yt. 10, 117).

Acc. Pln.— Yt. 8, 9;

Dat. Sing.— Geld. Yt. 16, 19; Geld. Yt. 13, 66; Geld. Yt. 5, 29;

Dat. Pln.—

Abl. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬙, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙 Vend. 10, 5.

Abl. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙 (Geld. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙 Yt. 17, 14).

Gen. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀 Wester. Vend. 10, 17; 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙-𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 Geld. Yt. 13, 133 (fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙, law, precept).

Gen. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀

Loc. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀-𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 (fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 bread); 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀 Y. 50, 12; 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 Y. 50, 13 (fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 a bridge).

Loc. Plu.—𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙

Voc. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙 Yt. 8, 29.

125. Feminine nouns ending in 𐬀 are rare, and their inflected forms are rarer still; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 (=𐬵𐬀𐬙, 𐬵𐬀𐬙 dust); 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 nom. sing.; 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 acc. sing.; [1] 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 (the second member of the compound to form the feminine of a certain class of quadrupeds; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀-𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 (a mare); 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 nom. sing.

126. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀 (mas. a bull, fem. a cow).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙
Acc.	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙 𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙 (Y. 46, 4)
Instr.	𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀 (Y. 46, 19) 𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀	𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬁𐬙
Dat.	𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀 (Gâth.) 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬁𐬙

[1] Compare Sans. धेनु a milch cow.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Abl.	꣡ꣀꣁꣂꣃ꣄	ꣅ꣆꣇꣈꣉ꣁꣂꣃ꣄
Gen.	꣊ꣀꣁꣂꣃ꣄, ꣊ꣀꣁ꣄ / ꣊ꣀꣂꣃ꣄	꣋꣌꣍ꣂꣃ꣄
Loc.	꣎ꣀꣂꣃ꣄	꣏꣐꣑ꣂꣃ꣄
Voc.	꣊ꣀꣁꣂꣃ꣄	꣒ꣀꣂꣃ꣄

Note.—ꣀꣂꣃ꣄ gen. du. (Yt. 13, 127 ꣀꣂꣃ꣄-꣔꣕꣖꣗)

Declension of Crude Bases ending in Consonants.

127. Consonantal bases are divided into:—

(1). **Unchangeable Bases**, *i.e.*, bases which either undergo no change at all, or generally undergo only such changes as are required by the rules of *sandhi*.

These generally include (1) monosyllabic bases (as, ꣘꣙, ꣚꣛꣜, ꣝꣞꣟, &c.), (2) compound nominal bases, the last members of which are roots (as, ꣠꣡꣢꣣-꣤꣥꣦꣧, ꣨꣩꣪-꣫꣬꣭꣮꣯, ꣰꣱ꣲ-ꣳꣴꣵ, ꣶꣷ꣸꣹꣺ꣻ-꣼ꣽꣾꣿ, &c.), and (3) bases ending in ꤀꤁, ꤂꤃ and ꤄꤅ (as, ꤆꤇꤈꤉ꤊ, ꤋꤌꤍꤎ, ꤏꤐꤑꤒ, &c.).

(2). **Changeable Bases**, *i.e.*, bases which in their declension show a strong and a weak form, or, in some instances, a strong, a middle, and a weakest form.[1]

128. The strong base is formed from the weak one by lengthening the penultimate vowel, or by the insertion of a nasal before the final consonant, *E.g.*

Weak Base.—ꤓꤔꤕ, ꤖꤗꤘ, ꤙꤚꤛꤜ, ꤝꤞꤟ, ꤠꤡ

Strong Base.—ꤢꤣꤤꤕ, ꤥꤦꤧꤘ, ꤨꤩꤪ꤫ꤜ, ꤬꤭꤮, ꤯ꤰ

* In some instances, the weak base is formed by the elision of the penultimate ꣄; in that case, the original crude form stands as the strong base, *E.g.*

[1] Compare Dr. Kielhorn's Sans. Grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 16.

Strong Base.—[illegible]

Weak Base.—[illegible].

129. "Some nouns have, as already mentioned, three bases, a strong base, a middle base, and a weakest base. By strengthening the middle base, *i. e.*, by lengthening its penultimate vowel, or by the insertion of a nasal, we obtain the strong base; if we weaken it, *i. e.*, by the elision of the penultimate vowel, or by contracting two of its letters into one, we obtain the weakest base,"[1] *E. g.*

Middle Base.—[illegible] or [illegible] (भ्रात्), [illegible]

[illegible]

Strong Base.—[illegible], [illegible] (भ्रात्), [illegible],

Weakest Base.—[illegible], [illegible] (भ्रात्), [illegible]

130. "Nouns with two bases, *i. e.*, a strong base and a weak base :— The strong base is used in the strong cases, the weak base in the weak cases.

The strong cases are the nom. and acc. sing., the nom. and acc. dual, and the nom. and acc. plu. in mas. and fem., and the nom. and acc. plu. in neut.

All the remaining cases (except the vocatives) in masculine, feminine and neuter are weak.

Nouns with three bases, *i. e.*, a strong base, a middle base, and a weakest base. The strong base is used in the strong cases, the middle base in the middle cases, and the weakest base in the weakest cases.

The strong cases are, as aforesaid, the nom. and acc. sing., the nom. and acc. dual, and the nom. and acc. plu. in mas. and fem., and the nom. and acc. plu. in neut.

The middle cases are those the terminations of which begin with consonants, *i. e.*, the instr., dat., abl. dual, and the instr., dat., abl. and loc. plu. in the masculine, feminine and neuter genders, and the nom. and acc. sing. neut. All the remaining cases, except the vocatives, *i. e.*, the cases with vowel-terminations, viz.,

[1] Dr. Kielhorn's Sans. Grammar, 3rd Edition, pp. 28-29.

the instr., dat., abl., gen. and loc. singular and the gen. and loc. dual, and the gen. plu. are the weakest cases.[1]"

The vocatives are not many; some forms of the voc. sing. are strong; *e. g.*, ; while others are weak; *e. g.*, (from), (from). Bases ending in take the middle base in the sing.; *e. g.*, . The voc. plu. forms are generally strong; *e. g.*, , , , &c.

131. In some instances, weak forms, nay, the weakest forms, are met with in strong cases, and *vice versâ*. *E. g.*

Nom. Sing.—for ; for or

Acc. Sing.— for ; for ; for ; for ; for , &c.

Nom. and Acc. Plu.— for ; for ; for ; for

Dat. Sing.— for

Gen. Sing.— for ; for ; for ; for , &c.

Loc. Sing.— for , &c.

132. Bases ending in —Masculine.

REMARKS.—These bases are formed by the ending of the suffixes (pres. partic. Parasmai.), (fut. partic. Parasmai.), , (adjectival suffixes denoting fulness or possession). In the nom. sing., is changed to or , sometimes to , without adding any termination. But when is changed to on account of its being coalesced with the preceding

[1] Compare Dr. Kielhorn's Sans. Grammar, 3rd. Edition, p. 29.

letter ज्, ञ् or न्, the nom. sing. becomes ॑ः; *e. g.*, the nom. sing. of ऋत्विज् (=ऋत्वि+ज्) is ऋत्विक्; of ऋत्विजाँ (orig., ऋत्वि+नाँ), ऋत्विकाँ. ऋत्विच् becomes ऋत्विक् in the nom. sing.; ऋत्विग् and ऋत्विन् are changed to ऋत्विग् and ऋत्विङ्, respectively. ऋत्विग् optionally forms its acc. sing. in ऋत्विक्षम्, ऋत्विग्भम् (instead of ऋत्विग्म्); *e. g.*, ऋत्विक्षमाभरत्, ऋत्विग्भमाभरत्, ऋत्विग्भाजम्, ऋत्विक्षमूर्जम्, ऋत्विग्भमूर्जम्. When the adjectival suffix ईन् is preceded by ईय्, the final ईन् forms the acc. sing. in ईनम्; *e. g.*, ऋत्वियीनमाभरत् (orig., ऋत्वियीन+माभरत्); similarly, ऋत्वियीनमूर्जम्, ऋत्वियीनमाभाजम्, &c. The remaining cases in the sing., except the voc., optionally reject ष् before the termination. In the instr., dat., abl. and gen. plu., either the final ग् or the consonant before it (*viz.*, ष्) is rejected before the termination. The loc. plu. substitutes सु (Gâth. हु) for the final ग्ष् and the termination. The voc. plu. is the same as the nom. plu.

133. ऋत्विज् (carrying)—Masculine.

Two bases:—Strong base, ऋत्विज्; weak base, ऋत्विज्, ऋत्विच्:—

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	ऋत्विक्, ऋत्विट्	ऋत्विजः
Acc.	ऋत्विजम्	ऋत्विजः
Instr.	ऋत्विजा	ऋत्विग्भिः, ऋत्विक्षु
		ऋत्विग्भिः, ऋत्विक्षु

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Abl.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Loc.	[illegible]	.....
Voc.	[illegible]	[illegible]

134. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base :—

Nom. Sing.—[illegible] (fast-going); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to go); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (Gold. [illegible]; rt. [illegible] to go against); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to rule); [illegible] (Yi. 4, 4); [illegible] (fr. [illegible]).

Nom. and Acc. Plu.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]; [illegible]);

[Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan]
[Avestan], [Avestan]

Acc. Sing.—[Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan] (Visp. 18, 2); [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan], [Avestan] (fr. [Avestan]—); [Avestan] (also [Avestan] Yt. 19, 66).

Instr. Sing.—[Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan]

Instr. Plu.—[Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] (fr. [Avestan] being).

Dat. Sing.—[Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] (Y. 49, 12); [Avestan] [Avestan] Gáth. (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan] Geld. Y. 12, 1.

Dat. Du.—[Avestan] Geld. Y. 1, 11.

Dat. Plu.—[Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan], [Avestan]. Mark [Avestan] Y. 20, 3 (base [Avestan]-).

Abl. Sing.—[Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] (base [Avestan]-).

Abl. Plu.—[Avestan], [Avestan], -[Avestan] [Avestan]

Gen. Sing.—[illegible]

Gen. Plu.—[illegible]

Loc. Sing.—[illegible]

Loc. Plu.—[illegible]

Voc. Sing.—[illegible]

Voc. Plu.—[illegible]

135. The feminine of this base is formed by adding the feminine suffix ঈ generally to the weak base (sometimes to the strong); e. g., [illegible]

Examples of the feminine formed from the strong base:—

[illegible] acc. sing. (Y. 52. 2.); [illegible] gen. sing. (base [illegible]; from [illegible]) Y. 9, 18. It follows the paradigm [illegible] (fem.). In some few cases, the fem. is formed by adding the feminine suffix আ, e. g., [illegible]. It follows the paradigm [illegible] (fem.).

136. Bases ending in ā— Feminine.

Bases ending in the affixal ā are always of the feminine gender. Some of their inflected forms, as found in Avesta, are given below. The base is unchangeable (see para. 126).

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	nā́ri[1] / nā́rī / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm	nā́rī / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm	nā́rī / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm
Acc.	nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm[2]	nā́rīm / nā́rīm	nā́rīm / nā́rīm
Instr.	nā́rī / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm / nā́rīm	.....	.....
Dat.	nā́rē[3]	nā́rī / nā́rīm	.....
Abl.	nā́rāiš	.....	.....

[1] The nom. sing. rejects the final ā before the termination. Compare Lat. Immortalitas, Bonitas, (orig., Immortalitat + s, &c).

[2] Possibly, a corrupt form of nā́rīm (fr. nā́rī-).

[3] nā́rī and nā́rīm are both used as crude forms, having the same meaning; e. g., nom. du. nā́rī nā́rīm (Y. 45, 5); acc. plu. nā́rīm nā́rīm (Y. 31, 21).

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
	[illegible]	[illegible]	
	[illegible]	[illegible]	
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
	[illegible]	[illegible]	
	[illegible]		
	[illegible]		
Loc.	[illegible]		
	[illegible]	....	....
	[illegible]		

137. Bases ending in [illegible]—Neuter.

REMARKS.—The nom. and acc. sing., rejecting the penultimate nasal ([illegible]), retain the crude form without any termination. The nom. and acc. plu. add [illegible] for the termination; very often, reject the penultimate nasal. The remaining cases follow the analogy of the mas. of the same base.

138. [illegible] (powerful, strong)—Neuter.

Two bases.—Strong base, [illegible]; weak base, [illegible].

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]

☞ The remaining cases follow the rule of the masculine of the same base, viz., [illegible].

139. Other inflected forms of the same base.

Nom. and Acc. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible].

Nom. and Acc. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible] (fr. [illegible] + [illegible])

140. Bases ending in ॅ—Masculine.

These bases, when preceded by ◌ा, undergo, in most cases, the following changes in inflection; but when preceded by ◌ं or ◌ृ, the base remains unchanged.

Remarks.—The nom. sing. rejects the final ॅ and the termination, whether preceded by ◌ा or ◌ं ◌ृ. The acc. sing. generally lengthens the penultimate अ. In the instr., dat., abl. and gen. sing., the penultimate vowel is, in most cases, dropped. The voc. sing. generally substitutes ◌ for the final ॅ without any termination. The nom. and acc. plu. often lengthen the penultimate ◌ा. The instr., dat. and abl. plu. reject the final consonant before the termination. The gen. plu. rejects the penultimate vowel. In the loc. plu., either the final nasal is rejected or the final ◌ाꣳ is changed to ◌ाꣲ before the termination.

141. ब्रह्मन् (holy, righteous)—Masculine.

Two bases.—Strong base, ब्रह्मन्, weak base, ब्रह्म.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	ब्रह्मा ब्रह्मन्	ब्रह्मणौ	ब्रह्मणः
Acc.	ब्रह्माणम्	ब्रह्मणौ (V. 2, 11).	ब्रह्मणः ब्रह्मः ब्रह्मणः
Instr.	ब्रह्मणा	.....	ब्रह्मभिः
Dat.	ब्रह्मणे ब्रह्मणः	.....	ब्रह्मभ्यः ब्रह्मभ्यः (V. 3, 4).

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Abl.	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀	.....	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱*
Gen.	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀 / 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬌𐬱𐬀 (Yt. 13, 127).	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀 / 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬀
Loc.	.....	.....	.....
Voc.	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀	.....	𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱

142. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬀 Geld.; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 possessing means; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 (fr. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌...); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 (a robber), 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 (fr. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 Afrāyāh); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁

Nom. Du.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 (𐬨𐬁𐬱) Vend. 1, 4.

Nom. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬀 (fr. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌...) Yt. 8, 48; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁

Acc. Sing.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱 (Geld. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 (Geld. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 a bandit); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 (𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌 |pe. n.) Yt. 19, 71.

Acc. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁 Geld. Yt. 15, 40. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬁,

* Mark the strong base in the instr., dat. and abl. plu.

Instr. Sing.—

Dat. Sing.—

Dat. Plu.—

Abl. Sing.—

Gen. Sing.—

Gen. Plu.—

Loc. Sing.—

Voc. Sing.—

Yt. 22, II. In these examples the final । is changed to ः.

Note.—The feminine of this base is formed by the addition of the feminine suffix ई to the weak base; e. g., . It follows the paradigm .

143. [illegible], [illegible] सन् (a dog)—Masculine.

Three bases.—Strong base, [illegible]; middle base, [illegible], [illegible]; but no forms of it are met with; weakest base, [illegible].

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	.....	[illegible]
Dat.	[illegible]	.....	.....
Gen.	[illegible]*	.....	[illegible]

144. [illegible] (Sans. पन्थन् a road, a path).

This substantive, used both in the masculine and feminine, is anomalous in its inflected forms.

Two bases.—Strong base, [illegible]; weak base, [illegible]

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Instr.	[illegible]	.....
Abl.	[illegible]	.....
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Loc.	(Gâth.) [illegible]	.....

* Also [illegible] (see Vend. 13, 10. 11. 28. 44)—the base being [illegible]

145. Bases ending in ॥ॐ—Neuter.

REMARKS.—The nom. and acc. sing. reject the final ॥ and the termination. The nom. and acc. plu. reject the termination, but lengthen the penultimate vowel, which, on account of the final nasal, is euphonically changed to ः. The instr., dat. and abl. plu. either drop the final ॥, or change ॥ॐ to ः, before the termination. In the loc. plu., either the last consonant is rejected or the final ॥ॐ changed to ः.

146. ॥ॐस्ः (creation), ॥ॐस्ः—Neuter.

The base is unchangeable (see para. 126).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः
Acc.	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः ॐस्ः ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः
Instr.	ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः
Dat.	ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः
Abl.	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः
	Geld. ॐस्ः	
Gen.	ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः
Loc.	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः ॐस्ः	ॐस्ः ॐस्ः ॐस्ः
	Geld. Visp. 2, 1	

147. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base.

Nom. Sing.—[illegible]

Acc. Sing.—[illegible] is also used in the acc. du.; *e. g.*, [illegible] (Yt. 13, 46); also, in the acc. plu.; *e. g.*, [illegible] (Y. 71, 6).

Acc. Plu.—[illegible]; [illegible] (Yt. 13, 49); [illegible] Yaç. 50, 10 (for [illegible]). [illegible] is also used in the masculine and feminine; *e. g.*, [illegible] mas. (Visp. 7, 4); [illegible] fem. (Y. 71, 10).

Dat. Sing.—[illegible]

Dat. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], also [illegible] (fr. [illegible]).

Abl. Sing.—[illegible]. The case-termination is dropped in [illegible] Wester., [illegible] Geld. (see Y. 57, 1; Vend. 3, 16).

Abl. Plu.—[illegible]

Gen. Sing.—[illegible]

Gen. Du.—[illegible] Yt. 10, 25.

Loc. Sing.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible]); [illegible] (fr. [illegible] a metre).

Loc. Plu.—[illegible]

148. Neuter bases ending in [illegible] are very few; some of their inflected forms as are met with are given below:—

Nom. and Acc. Sing.—[illegible] Vend. 19, 15, 35.

Instr. Sing.—[illegible]

Dat. Sing.—[illegible]

Abl. Sing.—[illegible] (fr. [illegible] the nose).

Gen. Plu.—[illegible] (from [illegible] ordinance; rt. [illegible]).

149. Bases ending in ऽ—Feminine.

The declension of feminine nouns, ending in ऽ, follows the analogy of masculine nouns of the same base; but, in the case of the final suffix being ऽ, the weak cases of the singular do not drop the penultimate vowel.

150. [illegible] (a virgin), [illegible] (night)—Fem.

[illegible]—unchangeable base; [illegible]—changeable base; two bases:—strong base, [illegible]; weak base, [illegible].

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Instr.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Abl.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Loc.	.....	[illegible]

151. [illegible] (water), [illegible] (the body), [illegible] (night)—Feminine.

[illegible]—changeable base; strong base, [illegible]; weak base, [illegible].

† It is also used in the sense of the loc. (VI. 1, 9; Vand. 4, 45).

𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀—unchangeable base (see para. 126).

𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀—unchangeable base (see para. 126).

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎		𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀
Acc.	𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬵, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀 (Gâth.) 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀	𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀	𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀
Instr.	𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀	.....	.....
Dat.	Gâth. Yt. 1, 21 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀	.....	𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀[1]
Abl.	𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀	.....	.....
Gen.	𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀	.....	𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀
Loc.	𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎	.....	.....
Voc.	.....		𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀

152. Bases ending in 𐬀𐬱𐬀—Masculine.

Remarks.—The nom. sing. rejects the final 𐬀 and the termination; before the enclitic particle 𐬎𐬀 or 𐬌𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬎 is generally lengthened; as, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬱𐬀, &c. The acc. sing., the nom. and acc. dual, and the nom. and acc. plu-

[1] Mark 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 Westerg. (Vend. 7, 16).

[2] *E. g.*, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀 Gôtr. (Gâth. 4, 5).
𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬎𐬀…𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀 Gôtr. (Y. 9, 4).

[3] An euphonic change of 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀+𐬌𐬀 (see para. 46).

generally lengthen the penultimate vowel. In the instr., dat., abl. and gen. sing., the penultimate -a is dropped. The voc. sing. affixes only ṣ at the end. The instr., dat. and abl. plu. insert an euphonic ṣ before the termination. The gen. plu. rejects the penultimate vowel. The voc. plu. is the same as the nom. plu.

153. 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙 (an officiating priest)—Masculine.

Three bases.—Strong base, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙, middle base, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙, weakest base, 𐬠𐬵𐬙.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙 (Gâth). 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬌
Acc.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬨	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬌
Instr.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬁	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬹𐬨𐬌
Dat.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬋	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬹𐬨𐬌
Abl.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬋𐬱	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬹𐬨𐬌
Gen.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬌	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬌
Voc.	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙	𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬌

154. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Nom. Sing.—𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀, also 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀 (Y. 45, 11).

Nom. Plu.—𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬠𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬱𐬀 Ft. 5. 13.

Acc. Sing.—..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ... Westerg., ..., ..., ...

Acc. Du.—..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ... Vt. 10, 110.

Acc. Plu.—..., ..., ... (fr. ..., ...).

Instr. Sing.—..., ... Gâth.

Dat. Sing.—..., ..., ..., ... Mark ... Y. 53, 4 (fr. ...)

Dat. Plu.—..., ... (fr. ..., ...)

Abl. Sing.—... (fr. ...); ..., ... (... + ..., see Y. 46, 7).

Gen. Sing.—..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ..., ...

Gen. Plu.—..., ..., ...

Voc. Sing.—..., ..., ..., ...

Voc. Plu.—... Y. 65, 12 O givers!

155. The feminine of this base is formed by the addition of the feminine suffix ... to the weakest base, e. g., ..., (from the weakest base ...); - similarly, ..., ... It follows the paradigm .... Compare Sans. ... (he who gives) mas.; ... fem.

156. (a man, a male)—Masculine.

The base is unchangeable; (see para. 126).

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
Nom.		Vend. 8, 10	
Acc.		.....	
Instr.		.....	
Dat.		.....	Westergaard
Abl.			
Gen.			
Loc.		.....	.....
Voc.		.....	

157. The feminine of is formed by the addition of the feminine suffix , before which the penultimate is lengthened; e. g., . It follows the paradigm .

158. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base:—

Acc. Sing.—,

Nom. and Acc. Plu.—, ,

Abl. Plu.— Westergaard, Geld.

Gen. Sing.— Yaç. 1, 11.

---

[1] Mark (Y. 30, 2) man and man, each individually for himself (Rev. Dr. Mills).

[2] Also, Geld. (Yt. 3, 4); Geld. (Yt. 8, 11).

Gen. Plu.—𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 Yt. 5, 39; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 Yt. 13, 57.

Voc. Plu.—𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 Vend. 21, 13.

159. Feminine nouns ending in 𐬀𐬰, 𐬀𐬨𐬀 and 𐬀𐬙 are very few; as, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀 (a sister); 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬌 (a daughter); 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬌 (a mother). They are declined like 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 (*mas.*). Their inflected forms as found in the Avesta texts are given below.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬌, 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌	𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬌
Acc.	𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬌𐬌	𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬌
Gen.	.....	𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 Gâth.
Loc.	𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬌	.....

160. Bases ending in 𐬨.

To this class belong nouns ending in the suffixes 𐬵𐬀𐬰, 𐬵𐬀𐬨 and 𐬵𐬀𐬙. Substantives ending in 𐬵𐬀𐬰 are all of the masculine gender; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬰𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬰𐬀; those in 𐬵𐬀𐬨 and 𐬵𐬀𐬙 are mostly neuter;* as, 𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬴𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬴𐬌, &c. But when these nouns are used as adjectives, they take the gender of the substantives which they qualify; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌 (milk)—neut. subs.; 𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 (Maidhyo-Zarenaya the milk-river) mas. adj.; similarly, 𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬌-𐬱𐬀𐬨𐬌 (a good thought) neut.

---

* Exceptions.—𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 mas. (a client); see 𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 nom. sing., Vend. 19, 1; 𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌 fem. (dawn); see 𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌 acc. sing., Vend. 18, 15.

subs.; ... (a youth of good thoughts) mas. adj., &c.

161. Bases ending in ...—Masculine.

Remarks.—The nom. sing. changes the final ... to ..., without adding any termination. The acc. sing., the nom. and acc. plu. lengthen the penultimate vowel. In the instr., dat., abl. and gen. sing. and the gen. plu., ... is reduced to ... (— of the suffix being dropped).

162. ... (the Creator), ... (Knowing)—Masculine.

Three bases.—Strong base, ..., ...; middle base, ..., ..., of which no inflected form is found; weakest base, ... or ..., ... or ....

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	... ...	...*
Acc.	...	... ..., ... Y. 58, 6.
Instr.	...— ...—	... Y. 58, 6.
Dat.	...	.....
Abl.	...	.....

* Mark ... those who have performed their actions (Y. 20, 3); ... is euphonically inserted (see para. 58).

	Singular.	Plural.
Gen.	...	...
Voc.	...	.....

163. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base.

Nom. Sing.—..., ... (cf. ...); ..., ..., ..., ... (cf. ... to see).

Acc. Sing.—..., (Guild. ...)

Dat. Sing.—... (cf. ...); ... (cf. ...); ... (cf. ...); ... (cf. ... to love)

Abl. Sing.—... (cf. ...; ... + ... + ...)

Gen. Plu.—..., ... (cf. ...); ..., ..., ... (Guild. Xv. 13, 156; cf. [...])

Voc. Sing.—... ...

164. The feminine of nouns ending in ... follows the analogy of the base ..., i. e., it is formed by suffixing ... to the weakest base; e. g., ... (from the weakest base ...; orig., ...); ... (from the weakest base ...; orig., ...); ... (from the weakest base ...; orig., ...).

165. ... ... (the moon)—Masculine.

The base is unchangeable (see para. 126).

	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	..., ...	..., ...
Acc.	...	...
Gen.	...	...

Observation.—अप्सस्, in some of its inflectional forms, changes its base to अप्सर्; e.g., nom. sing. ऋभुक्षाः (ऋभुक्षाविभ्वान्नरः) Yt. 10, 142; dat. sing. अप्सरसे Yt. 7, 1; gen. sing. अप्सरसाम् Yt. 7, 0; voc. sing. अप्सरः Vend. 21, 9.

Adjectives ending in अस् are both mas. and fem.; e.g., दाशस्वान् दस्युहन् (mas.); दाशस्वती दस्युहन् (fem.).

166. Bases ending in अस्—Neuter.

Remarks.—The nom. and acc. sing. change the final अस् to र्, while the nom. and acc. plu. to स्, without adding any termination. The instr., dat. and abl. plu. change अस् to ः, and the loc. plu. to र्, before the termination; sometimes the loc. plu. rejects the final अ.

167. अप्सस् वचस (a word)—Neuter.

The base is unchangeable (see para. 126).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	वचस्	वचांसि
Acc.	वचस्	वचांसि
Instr.	वचोभिः	वचोभिस्
Dat.	वचोभ्यः	वचोभ्यस्
Abl.	वचोभ्यः	वचोभ्यस्
Gen.	वचसः	वचसाम्
Loc.	वचसि	वचःसु

168. Other inflected forms, both regular and irregular, of the same base.

Nom. and Acc. Sing.—वचोवित्, वचोदृश्, वचोधृक्; वचस् help; वचस्

the throat. Before the enclitic particle -ca or -cā, ē is reduced to a, e.g. -mazdaēcā, -mazdaēcīt, &c. In the Gāthā dialect, the final ē is, in several instances, changed to ī: as, ahmāi, ahmāt, ahī, &c. Mark ahmāi Geld. Y. 43, 8: ahmāi-dastī

Nom. and Acc. Plu.—ahurāō, -mazdaēcā, -mazdaēcīt, ahurā, -mazdaēcīt

Instr. Sing.—-mazdaēcā, -mazdaēcīt, -mazdaēcīt

Instr. Plu.—-mazdaēcīt, ahurāīt, -mazdaēcīt, ahurāīt Geld.; ahurāīt Geld. Y. 34, 2 (with the chants).

Dat. Sing.—ahurāi, ahurāi (Geld. ahurāi, ahurāi); -mazdaēcīt, -mazdaēcīt, ahurāi, -mazdaēcīt Geld.; ahurāi, -mazdaēcīt, -mazdaēcīt

Abl. Sing.—ahurāt, ahurāt, -mazdaēcīt Geld. Ys. 8, 47; -mazdaēcīt, -mazdaēcīt (fr. -mazdaēcīt darkness)

Abl. Plu.—ahurāīt. Mark ahurāīt (Geld. Ys. 10, 23).

Gen. Sing.—ahurāi, ahurāi, -mazdaēcīt, ahurāi

Gen. Plu.—ahurāīt, ahurāīt, ahurāīt

Loc. Sing.—-mazdaēcīt, ahurāī, -mazdaēcīt, -mazdaēcīt Westerg. (for -mazdaēcīt in dem.) Y. 43, 8; -mazdaēcīt Ys. 8, 8; -mazdaēcīt Y. 65, 4; -mazdaēcīt Ys. 5, 4; (origin. -mazdaēcīt; by the dropping of ē the preceding vowel is lengthened): -mazdaēcīt also ahurāīt (Ys. 10, 106; Vend. 19, 3).

Loc. Plu.—

Voc. Sing.— V. 25. 4.

169. Bases ending in अ॰—Mas. and Fem.

These are mostly adjectives; very few are substantives. They are inflected according to the general rule, except the nom. sing., which changes the final अ॰ to स्, sometimes to —, without adding any termination. Comparative adjectives ending in तरस् (mas.) form their nom. sing. in तरः, e. g., (mas.), (mas.), (fem.). Some inflected forms of these nouns, as found in the sacred writings, are as follow. The base is unchangeable.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.		
	(Gr. Gd.)	
Acc.		
Instr.		Gerd. (fr.)
Dat.		.....

Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Loc.	.....	[illegible]
Voc.	[illegible]	.....

170. ז״ק (the land, the earth), ◦◦◦ (a borough, a family).—Feminine.

The base is unchangeable (see para. 129).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	ז״ק	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Instr.	[illegible]	.....
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Abl.	[illegible] (Geld.)	[illegible]
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]

[1] Mark [illegible] gen. dual Yt. 13, 127.

[2] *E.g.*, [illegible], also [illegible] (Geld. Y. 12, 3).

[3] By the insertion of ə before the termination ([illegible]).

[4] [illegible]—in the sense of the lee. (see Vend. 3, 36. 37. 38).

[5] Also, [illegible] Geld. Yt. 5, 6 (base [illegible]).

Loc. ....

Voc. .... Y. 65, 12.

171. Bases ending in ..., ...-Neuter.

These are, in most cases, indeclinable; very few of them have inflected forms, especially in the nom. and acc. sing. and plu., and, sometimes, in the loc. plu.; *e. g.*, ... nom. and acc. sing.; ..... acc. sing. and du.; ....., ..., ..., ..., ..., ... (Gâth.) acc. sing.; ..... (Y. 68 2) dat. sing.; ..... (Visp. 10, 1) gen. sing. (*e. g.*: ...); ..... (Yt. 1, 18) gen. sing.; ....., ..., ..., ... acc. plu.; ....., ..., ... loc. plu.

172. Some notable inflected forms of nouns:—

..... mas. (an evil-doer)—..... nom. sing. ..... (one who spreads death or evil in the world)—..... mas. nom. sing.; ..... Westerg. (Y. 9, 34) mas. gen. sing.; ..... (Y. 57, 15) fem. gen. sing. ..... mas. (winter)—..... nom. sing.; ..... acc. sing.; ..... gen. sing.; ..... nom. plu.

..... neut. (the joint of a finger)—..... acc. sing. ..... fem. (Draj, demon-of-lie)—..... nom. sing.; .....

[1] Also ..... (see Vend. 6, 29. 31. 33)—but .....

[illegible], [illegible] acc. sing.; [illegible] abl. sing.; [illegible], [illegible] gen. sing.; [illegible] voc. sing.; [illegible] nom. and acc. plu.; [illegible] Gold. (Yt. 1, 7) gen. plu.

[illegible] mas. (the navel, an offspring, kith)—[illegible] Yt. 13, 95; [illegible] Gold. (Yt. 8, 34) nom. sing.; [illegible] acc. sing.; [illegible] voc. sing.; [illegible] (Y. 46, 12) loc. plu.

[illegible] mas. (the navel, an offspring, kith)—[illegible] acc. sing.; [illegible] abl. sing.; [illegible] gen. sing.

[illegible] mas. (a metric foot)—[illegible] instr. plu.; [illegible] abl. plu.

[illegible] neut. (covering, matting)—[illegible] acc. sing.; [illegible] instr. sing.

[illegible] mas. (Afrīnyāh)—[illegible] nom. sing.; [illegible] acc. sing.

[illegible] adj. (great)—[illegible] dat. sing.; [illegible] acc. plu.; [illegible] [instr. plu.

[illegible] mas. and fem. (a word)—[illegible] nom. sing.; [illegible], [illegible] acc. sing.; [illegible] instr. sing.; [illegible] (Y. 8, 1) gen. sing.; [illegible] nom. plu.; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] acc. plu.; [illegible] abl. dual; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] [illegible] abl. plu.; [illegible], [illegible] gen. plu.

[illegible] neut. (a weapon)—[illegible], [illegible] nom. [illegible]; [illegible] acc. sing.; [illegible], [illegible] instr.

---

* Similarly, [illegible] Gold. Y. 62, 5 (fr. [illegible]—)

sing., — Weston., — Gold. (Y. 57, 39) matr. dual, — gen. plu.

— neut. (bedding) — — nom. and acc. sing.

— mas. (watching, guarding) — — nom. sing., — acc. sing., — nom. plu.

— neut. (a seat, a place) — — acc. sing.; — — (also, —) gen. sing.

— mas. (seeing, watching) — — nom. sing.

— neut. (the sun) — —, — nom. sing.; —, — gen. sing.

— mas. (good in deed) — — nom. sing.

173. Nouns having more than one base without affecting the meaning in their inflected forms.

There are some nouns, which, in their particular inflected forms, take different bases; in most cases, a redundant — is subjoined at the end. *E. g.*, —, — (a man, a male); —, — (time); —, —, — (a warrior); —, —, — (a priest); —, — (invoking); —, — (a dog); —, — (a ruler, a tyrant); —, — (a male); —, — (land); —, — (winter); —, — (the sun); —, — (a sword); —, — (possessing a wounding spear); —, — (the moon); —, —, — (a bow,

the body.): ᵃᵛᵉˢᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵉˢᵃᵐ, ᵃᵛᵉˢᵃᵐ (altar); ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (a maid); ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (orig. ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ) (a friend); ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (the tongue).

174. Nouns used in more than one gender.

There are some substantives, which, in the same sense, are used in different genders, in their inflected forms. *E. g.*

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (abundance, prosperity;—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ neut. dat. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. gen. sing.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (a region)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ neut. acc. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. loc. plu.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (like a mountain)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ masc. acc. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. acc. plu.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (an offering, an oblation)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ neut. loc. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. abl. sing.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ, ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (creation)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ neut. nom. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. acc. plu.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (the eye)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ neut. nom. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. dat. plu.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (dead matter)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ masc. nom. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. nom. sing.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (a house)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (Yaj. 5, 65) masc. acc. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (Vend. 3. 2) neut. acc. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. loc. plu.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (a feather)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ masc. nom. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. acc. plu.

ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ (an arm)—ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ masc. gen. sing.; ᵃᵛᵃᵗᵃ fem. acc. plu.

𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭 (Mâthra) — 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬱 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭 masc. man, sing.; 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱 fem. acc. plu.

𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬹 (a city) — 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬹𐬱 neut. gen. sing.; 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬹𐬱 .. 𐬀𐬱 fem. acc. plu.

Chapter IV.

Gender.

175 Like its sister languages, the Avesta has three genders, viz., masculine, feminine and neuter. As stated before, the gender is, in several cases, ascertained from suffixes, either primary or secondary; as, 𐬀𐬱 mas.; 𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀, 𐬀𐬵 fem.; 𐬌𐬱, 𐬌𐬱𐬀, 𐬀𐬱, 𐬉𐬱, 𐬉𐬱𐬀, 𐬀𐬵 neut. It is also distinguished by the sex, i.e., substantives indicating the male sex are masculine; as, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬭 (a son), 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬁 (a father), 𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬀 (a brother), 𐬀𐬱 (a man), &c. Those indicating the female sex are feminine; as, 𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬹𐬐 (a daughter), 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀𐬵 (a mother), 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 (a sister), 𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀 (a woman), &c.

Rules for the formation of the feminine.

176. The feminine of consonantal bases, which admit of a feminine, is most commonly formed by the addition of the suffix 𐬌 to the weak base, when their declension shows two bases; nouns with three bases subjoin 𐬌 for the feminine to the weakest base; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬁𐬨𐬎𐬹𐬱𐬀 fem., from 𐬵𐬁𐬨𐬎𐬹𐬱 (weak base of 𐬵𐬁𐬨𐬎𐬹𐬱𐬀 holy); 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀 fem., fr. 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱 (weak base of 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀 defiled by the corpse); 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬌 fem., fr. 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀𐬵 (weakest base of 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬱 the maintainer); 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀 fem., fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱 (weakest base of 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬱𐬀 knowing).

177. Comparative bases in ઇયસ્ form their feminine by the addition of the feminine suffix ી, before which the penultimate ઇ is dropped and સ changed to ષ; e. g. ગરિષ્ઠસ્ (mas.) larger, greater; fem. ગરિષ્ઠસી; ગરીયસ્ (mas.) more powerful; fem. ગરીયસી; but ગરિષ્ઠતમ (better) drops ઠ in the fem.; e. g. ગરિષ્તમા. Comp. Sans. ગરીયસ heavier, fem. ગરીયસી; પાપિયસ wicked; fem. પાપિયસી.

Note.—ન્રિ (ન્ર a man) forms its feminine base નારિ.

178. The feminine base of adjectives ending in અ, and of substantives in અ which admits of a feminine, is for the most part formed by the addition of the feminine suffix આ to the masculine, in other words, by lengthening the final vowel. E. g. મહાબલ (mas.) strong; fem. મહાબલા; સુન્દર (mas.) beautiful; fem. સુન્દરા; પિતામહ (mas.) a grandfather; fem. પિતામહા; પિતૃવ્ય (mas.) an uncle, fem. પિતૃવ્યા, &c. But, in several instances, the feminine base is formed by substituting the feminine suffix ઈ for the final અ; e. g. દેવયજ્ઞ દેવી (mas.) a Deo; fem. દેવયજ્ઞી દેવી મેષાજ મેષી (mas.) a ram, fem. મેષાજી મેષી an ewe; સુવર્ણમય (mas.) golden; fem. સુવર્ણમયી; સ્વામિન (Sans. સ્વામિન a master) forms its feminine by subjoining the word સ્ત્રી, or changing it to સ્વામિની (Sans. સ્વામિની, સ્વામિન્); e. g. સ્વામિનીસ્ત્રી સ્વામિનીસ્ત્રિયમ્ acc. sing. Vend. 7, 42; સ્વામિનીસ્ત્રિયા nom. sing. Vend. 12, 7 (the mistress of the house).

Note.—Sans. સ્વામિની is from સ્વામન્ (the original form of સ્વામિન). સ્વામિ is, though rarely, also used for સ્વામિન્; e. g. સ્વામિને dat. sing. (see Yt. 17, 58).

179. The feminine base of adjectives ending in 𐬀 is generally formed by the addition of the feminine suffix 𐬌 to the masculine base; e. g. 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 (mas.) broad; fem. 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬐𐬌; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 (mas.) youthful; fem. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬐𐬌 (Geld. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬐𐬀𐬌 Gâth. Yaç. 53, 3).

180. In the case of some lower classes of animals, the mas. and fem. are formed by subjoining 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 (male)* and 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬌 (female)† respectively to the word denoting the whole class; as, 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬀 (a horse); 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬌-𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬀 or 𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬌, Sans. मत्या (a mare); 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 (a he-camel), 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 (a she-camel); 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 or 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 (an ox); 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬌-𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 (a cow); 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬐𐬌-𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬀 (a she-ass).

Chapter V.

Adjectives.

181. The declension of substantives includes, as stated before, that of adjectives. Adjectives may be divided into three classes, viz.—1 Simple, 2 Derivative, 3 Compound.

(1) Simple adjectives are those that come directly from roots and are not derived from substantives; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎; 𐬐𐬌𐬵𐬎; 𐬵𐬀𐬎.

Compare Persian تیز, بد, خوب, دراز, کر, کوتاه, &c.

(2) Derivative adjectives are those that are derived from substantive nouns; as, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬎 (from 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀), 𐬐𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎 (fr. 𐬐𐬌𐬎𐬎), 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎 (fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬎), 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬐𐬌𐬎 (fr. 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬐𐬌), &c.

Compare Persian دولتمند, نیرمند, خطرناک, امیدوار, &c.

(3) Compound adjectives are those that are formed by using the

* Compare Sans. वर्षि, वृषन, वृषभ (rt. वृष् to engender).

† Compare Sans. वेत् (rt. वे to suck).

‡ Compare Sans. द्यवन् Nat. Obs., King. Ox.

roots, participles or substantives as the last member of a compound; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀, &c.

Compare Persian فرمان‌روا, جنگ‌آزمود, جهان‌دیده, خیره‌زبان, نیک‌بخت, نیک‌نام, &c.

182. Adjectives in Avesta, as in Sanskrit, always agree in gender, number and case with the substantives they qualify; e. g. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (mas. nom. sing.); 𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (fem. acc. sing.); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (neut. nom. sing.); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (fem. dat. sing.); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (fem. nom. and acc. plu.); 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (fem. loc. plu).

Rules for the formation of the feminine base of adjectives ending in 𐬀, 𐬀𐬥𐬀, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀, 𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 and 𐬀𐬥 have been treated before.

183. The crude bases of compound adjectives, the last member of which is a root ending in a consonant, are used in the three genders. E. g.

(𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀) 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 mas. nom. sing. (Yt. 8, 50).

𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀) fem. acc. sing. (Y. 52, 1).

(𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀) 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 neut. instr. sing. (Yt. 13, 52).

𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀) mas. gen. sing. (Vend. 7, 27).

𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀 (𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀) fem. gen. sing. (Yt. 10, 134).

Comparison of Adjectives.

184. (a)—*By means of the secondary suffixes* 𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀 *and* 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀.

The comparative degree of adjectives is formed by the addition to their masculine base of the suffix 𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀 Sans. यर् (mas. and neut. base; 𐬨𐬀𐬥𐬀 Sans. यरा fem. base), the superlative degree by the addition to their masculine base of the suffix

-वत् Sans. -वत् (mas. and neut. base; -वती Sans. -वती fem. base); e. g., pos. स्वादुमत् sweet-scented; compara. स्वादुमत्तर; super. स्वादुमत्तम.

Exception:— बहुलवत्तर (orig., बहुल + तरप्).

Compare Sans. पूर्वि pure, गुरु heavy; comparn. पूर्वितर, गुरुतर; super. पूर्वितम, गुरुतम.

Bases of adjectives ending in -र mostly substitute -र् for -र before -तर and -तम; e. g. pos. -वत्सरमणीय; compara. -वत्सरमणीयतर; super. -वत्सरमणीयतम.

185. Adjectives, which in their declension show two bases, assume before -तर and -तम their weak base; those with three bases assume before -तर and -तम their weakest base; e. g., -वत्सरमणीय (orig., -वत्सर + मणीय), weak base -मणीय; -वत्सरमणीयतर (orig., -वत्सर + मणीयतर), weak base -मणीयतर; -वत्सरमणीयतम (from -मणीय + -यस्तम, partic. reduplic. perf.; rt. यस्), weakest base -मणीयस्तम; -वत्सरमणीयतम (from -मणीय + -तमप्; rt. तम्); weakest base -मतम्; similarly, -वत्सरमणीयतम (from -मणीयतम; rt. तम्); weakest base -यतम् or -तमम्.

186. Final -ष्मन् and -यस् are changed before -तर and -तम to -ष्म and -स, respectively; e. g., -वत्सरमणीयस्म (from -ष्मन्); -वत्सरमणीयस्मतर (fr. -ष्मतर); -वत्सरमणीयस्मतम (from -ष्मतम);

---

* Sometimes, in the Gothic dialect, -वत् is used; e. g., -वत्सरमणीयवत्तम Vet. 37, 5.

(fr. -mat-); -vāstrya- (fr. -vāstra-); -vāstryāna- (fr. -vāstryā-). -tara and -tāt are frequently subjoined as primary suffixes to compound adjectives, the last member of which is a root; e. g., -hvarə-xšaēta- (rt. xšaē); -vīspa-tāt- (rt. spā); -vīspa-xratu-tāt- (rt. kar); -vīspa-hu-kərənaoi-tāt- (orig., -kərənaoiti + -tāt; rt. kar); -vīspa-hu-karə-tāt- (orig., -karə + -tāt; rt. kar).

187. Occasionally, -tara and -tāt are subjoined to substantives; -tara meaning 'more inclined to, more in the direction of'; -tāt, 'most resembling'; e. g., -apara- easterly; -apara-tāt- westerly; -dąsina- southerly; -dąsina-tāt- northerly; -daēva-tāt- the most Dev-like, i.e., the most fiendish; -zaraθuštra-tāt- the most Zarathushtra-like, i.e., Dastoorlu Dastoor; -aθaurva-tāt- the most Athrava-like; -zairi-tāt- finest-coloured.

188. The same terminations (viz., -tara and -tāt) are also suffixed to particles; e. g., -ava-tara- (also -ava-tāt-); -upa-tara- (also -upa-tāt-); -para-tara-; -para-tāt-.

189. Sometimes, -tāt is subjoined to cardinal numerals; e. g., -vīsaiti-tāt- (Sans. -viṃśati-) twentieth; -satai-tāt- a hundred times; -hazaŋra-tāt- (comp. Sans. -sahasra-) a thousand times; -baēvara-tāt- ten thousand times.

190. (b) —By means of the primary suffixes -tara and -tāt,

Many adjectives may optionally form their comparative degree by the addition of the suffix ಅನ್ನು Sans. इयस् * (mas. and neut. base; ಅನ್ನುವ Sans. इयसी fem. base), and their superlative degree by the addition of the suffix ಅಲವು Sans. इष्ठ (mas. and neut. base; ಅಲವು Sans. इष्ठा fem. base); *e. g.*, compara. ಅನ್ನುವಾದಂ, ಅನ್ನುವಾದಳ್, ಅನ್ನುವಾದದ್; super. ಅಲವಾದಂ, -ದಳ್, -ದದ್, ಅಲವಾದವರ್, &c. The difference between ಅದಂ, ಅಳ್ and ಅನ್ನು, ಅವು is this, that whereas ಅದಂ and ಅಳ್ are added to the masculine base of the adjective, ಅನ್ನು and ಅವು are subjoined to the root, from which the adjective has been derived, the vowel of the root being generally gunated, sometimes lengthened; *e. g.*, ಅನ್ನುವಾಗುವ (rt. ಆಗು); -ದಿನ್ನು ಅಲವು (rt. ಕೆಡು); ಅಲವು ಪೊಸವು (rt. ಪುದು); ಅಲವು ಪಿಸವು (rt. ಪಿಸು); ಅಲವು ಪೊಡವು (rt. ಪೊಡು). Compare Sans. क्षिप्र quick; compara. क्षेपीयस्; superl. क्षेपिष्ठ (rt. क्षिप् to move quickly).

191. The following are some special rules for the addition of ಅನ್ನು and ಅಲವು :—

(a) "The final vowel of a masculine base, which contains more than one syllable, or its final consonant together with the vowel preceding it, is dropped, the final consonant resuming its original form; *e. g.*, ಅಲ್ಪಿನ್ನು, super. ಅಲವಾಲ್ಪಿನವು; ಪಱಿನ್ನು, ಪಱಿನವು; ಪೆರಿನ್ನು, ಪೆರಿನವು; ಅಲವಾನವು; ಪೆರಿನವು, ಪೆರಿನವು, ಅಲವಾನವು. Compare Sans. पाप wicked; पापीयस्, पापिष्ठ; बहु great; बहीयस्, बंहिष्ठ.

(b) The suffixes ದಂ, ದಳ್, ದದ್, ಅನ್ನುವ, &c., are dropped, when the remainder of the base thereupon consists of only one syllable; it undergoes no change, except that its final resumes its original form; but when the remainder of the base contains more

* Ved. यस्; *e. g.*, वरीयस् ಅನ್ನುವರಿಯಸ್, fr. वर ಅನ್ನುವರಿ great

than one syllable, rule (a) is applicable to it;* e. g., ... compara. ..., super. ...; ..., super. ..., compara. ..., super. ...; ..., compara. ..., super. ...; ..., super. ..., &c. Comp. Sans. ..., ... possessed of wealth; compara. ..., super. ..., ...

(c) ... is substituted for the initial ... of a base, when ... is immediately followed by a consonant; e. g., ..., super. ... —Comp. Sans. ..., ..., ...

192. A few adjectives admit of both forms in the comparative and the superlative; e. g., ... (fr. ...); ..., ... (fr. ...); ..., ... (fr. ...); ..., ... (fr. ...); ..., ... (fr. ...), &c.

193. It should be noted that all adjectives are not complete in the three forms of the positive, comparative and superlative degrees; a great many of them have two forms, while others only one; e. g., ... (fr. ...); ..., ... (much mindful); ... ..., ..., ... (fr. ...); ..., ...

* Dr. Kellhorn's Sanskrit grammar, IInd Edition, p. 58.

† ... is also the compara. of ... holy (see T. 48, 4).

‡ In ... (X. 12, 4), the most heard of good.

194. List of some notable comparatives and superlatives.

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
Gāth. powerful		
bad	Y. 59, 31.	
strong		
of mighty strength		
holy		
swift		
strong		
friendly		
righteous		
little		
small		
wise		
one who smites		
powerful		
active		

Positive.	*Comparative.*	*Superlative.*
frightful		
long		
firm		
wise		
untrue		
near		
lovely		
healing		
great		
addicted to the Yâtu		
radiant		
light		
good	Y. 59, 31	
swift		
adorable		
one who knows		

[1] gen. sing. (see Y. 31, 2).

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
fond-smiling		
victorious		
beneficent	Y. 56, 1	
bulky		
bounteous		
beautiful		
happy		
devoted / Gold.	Gold.	
fool		
active, living		
well-knowing		
having good sense		
sweet-scented		

106. Some adjectives have a double comparative and superlative; e.g. (double compara.); (double super.).

Compare Sans. पाप (bad), पापीयस्, पापीयस्तर, पापिष्ठ, पापिष्ठतर, पापिष्ठतम, पंज, पंजतर.

196. Sometimes, especially in particles, ಅ and ಅಕ್ಕ are substituted for ಅವರ and ಅವಕ್ಕ for the comparative and the superlative, respectively; as, ಅತ್ತಿ (orig., ಅವರ್ತಿ, from ಅವರ); ಅಮಗ (fr. ಅವಗ); ಅದಮ್ಮ, ಅದಕ್ಕ (fr. ಅವ); ಅದಕ್ಕಾಗಿ (fr. ಅವರಕ್ಕಾಗಿ).

197. ಅವಳ (the lengthened form of ಅವಳ) is also added to pronominal bases; as, ಅವಳೊಳಗೆ (this of the two) (from ಈ, ಈಕ this); ಅವಳವನು (whoever of the two) (fr. ಆವ who); ಅವಳವನ್ (which of the two? fr. ಏನ್ who? which?). Comp. Sans. ಇತರ, ಇತಮ (who or which of many); ಕತರ, ಕತಮ (which of many?); ಇತರ (other); ಅನ್ಯತರ (one of the two); ಏಕತರ (one of the two); ಏಕತಮ (one of many); ತತರ, ತತಮ (that one of many).

The feminine bases of ಅವಳ, ಅದಕ್ಕ, ಅವಮ್ಮ and ಏವಮ್ಮ are, as aforesaid, ಅವಳ ಅದಕ್ಕ, ಅವಮ್ಮ and ಏವಮ್ಮ, respectively.

Chapter VI.—Numerals.

Cardinals.

198. The crude forms of the simple cardinals are :—

1 ಒಂದು ಒಕ	7 ಏಳು ಸಪ್ತ
2 ಎರಡು ದ್ವಿ	8 ಎಂಟು ಅಷ್ಟ
3 ಮೂರು ತ್ರಿ	9 ಒಂಬತ್ತು ನವ
4 {ನಾಲ್ಕು, ನಾಲ್ಕು ಚತುರ್.	10 ಹತ್ತು ದಶ
5 ಐದು ಪಂಚ	11 ಹನ್ನೊಂದು ಏಕಾದಶ
6 ಆರು ಷಟ್	12 ಹನ್ನೆರಡು ದ್ವಾದಶ
	13 ಹದಿಮೂರು ತ್ರಯೋದಶ

11 एकादशन्	50 पञ्चाशत्
12 द्वादशन्	60 षष्टि
13 त्रयोदशन्	70 सप्तति
14 चतुर्दशन्	80 अशीति
15 पञ्चदशन्	90 नवति
16 षोडशन्	100 शत
17 सप्तदशन्	1,000 सहस्र
18 अष्टादशन्	10,000 अयुत
19 नवदशन्	नियुत numberless myriads.
20 विंशति	
30 त्रिंशत्, त्रिंशद्	
40 चत्वारिंशत्, चत्वारिंशद्	

Note.—In Sanskrit, there are words for higher numbers than 10,000; as, लक्ष, one hundred thousand; प्रयुत, one million; कोटि, ten millions; अर्बुद, one hundred millions, सहस्रार्बुद, one thousand millions; पद्म, ten thousand millions, &c.

189. It will be seen from the above, that the numerals from 'eleven' to 'nineteen' are formed by compounding the first nine from एक to नव with दशन्. In these compounds, एक inserts ए, while द्वादशन्, त्रयोदशन्, चतुर्दशन् and नवदशन् reject their final nasal.

In enumeration, contrary to the English system, the lower number is first expressed, and then, in regular order, the higher one, with the particle च generally at the end of each numeral; e. g., सप्तषष्टिश्च पञ्चशतानि five and seventy=75;

---

* नवतय is also used in the sense of 'nine'; as, नवतयो नवतयश्च acc. dual (twice nine) see Vend. 14, 12.



(Vend. 22, 2).

i. e., nine *plus* ninety *plus* nine hundred *plus* nine thousand *plus* ninety thousand=99,999.

Inflected forms of the Cardinals as found in the Avestaic writings:—

200.  (one) is declined only in the singular.  neut. nom.;  masc. acc.;  fem. acc.;  neut. acc.;  fem. instr.;  masc. gen.;  Wester,  Geld. fem. gen.;  neut. loc.

201.  (two) is declined only in the dual; in some of its inflected forms it drops its initial consonant.  masc. nom.;  masc. acc.;  acc.;  neut. acc.;  (orig. ) neut. acc.;  neut. instr.;  masc. dat.;  abl.;  neut. abl.;  masc. gen.

202.  (three) is declined only in the plural.  masc. nom.;  fem. nom.;  masc. acc.;  fem. acc.;  acc.;  dat.;  gen.;  fem. gen.

203.  (four) is declined only in the plural.  nom.;  (Vend. 19, 22) acc.

 (four) is always used as the first member of a compound; as  ,  ,  , &c.

204 The cardinals 𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀 (five), 𐬯𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬯𐬀 (six), 𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 (seven), 𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀 (eight), 𐬐𐬞𐬀𐬌 (nine) and 𐬴𐬀𐬌 (ten) have one form only for the three genders; e. g., 𐬯𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬯𐬀 nom. and acc.; 𐬴𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 gen. plu.—𐬯𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬯𐬀 nom. and acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 nom. and acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀 nom. and acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬀𐬌 nom. and acc.; 𐬴𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬀𐬌 gen. plu.—𐬴𐬀𐬌 nom. and acc.; 𐬴𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬴𐬀𐬌 gen. plu.

205 𐬯𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (twelve) acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (fifteen) acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (twenty) acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (thirty) acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (forty) nom. and acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (fifty) nom. and acc.; 𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 Wester., 𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 Geld. instr. plu.—𐬯𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 (sixty) acc.—𐬴𐬀𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 (seventy) acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 (eighty) acc.—𐬐𐬞𐬀𐬌 (ninety) acc.; 𐬐𐬞𐬀𐬌𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 acc. plu.—𐬀𐬑𐬌 (a hundred) nom. and acc. sing.; 𐬀𐬑𐬌 𐬀𐬑𐬌 fem. acc. du.; 𐬀𐬑𐬌 nom. and acc. plu.; 𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 acc. plu.; 𐬀𐬑𐬌𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 instr. plu.—𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌 (a thousand) nom. and acc.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 dat. sing.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 fem. acc. du.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 masc. acc. plu.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 masc. acc. (Yt. 3, 10); 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 instr. plu.—𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 (ten thousand) acc.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 dat.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 acc. plu.; 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 masc. acc. plu. (Yt. 3, 10); 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 Wester., 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬐𐬞𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 Geld. instr. plu. Mark 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 Wester., 𐬴𐬀𐬌𐬴𐬀𐬌 Geld. nom (Yt. III, 64).

Ordinals

295. The ordinals, except the equivalent of 'the first,' are generally derived from the cardinals, as will be seen from the following list:—

1	𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬀, 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬎 (fem. 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬌-, 𐬀𐬎𐬌-) 𐬌𐬀𐬌[1].
2	[2]𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎 (fem. 𐬀-) द्वितीय.
3	𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬍𐬀 (fem. 𐬀—) तृतीय.
4	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 (fem. 𐬀—) चतुर्थ, तुरीय, तुर्य.
5	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 पञ्चम.
6	𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 (fem. 𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 Westerg. Vend. 14, 10) षष्ठ.
7	[3]𐬀𐬍𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀 सप्तम.
8	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 अष्टम.
9	𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 नवम.
10	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬎 दशम.
11	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬍𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 एकादश.
12	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 द्वादश.
13	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬍𐬀 त्रयोदश.
14	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬍𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 चतुर्दश.
15	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 / 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 पञ्चदश.
16	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌-𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 षोडश.
17	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀 सप्तदश.
18	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀 अष्टादश.
19	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 नवदश.
20	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 विंश or विंशतितम.
30	𐬀𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬍 त्रिंश or त्रिंशत्तम.

[1] Besides 𐬌𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬎 and 𐬀𐬎𐬍 are also used in Sanskrit.

[2] Also, 𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 (= 𐬀 + द्वितीय) see Wester. Vend. 10, 8, note, in the Gâthâs, 𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 (Y. 45, 1)

[3] Mark 𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 (having seven divisions); e. g., 𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 (Ys. 12, 20).

[4] E. g., 𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 after her fifteenth year (Vend. 14, 15).

207. Multiplicatives.

एकधा ekadhā once	त्रिंशद्धा triṃśaddhā thirtyfold
द्वा, द्विधा, द्वेधा, द्वैधम् twice, twofold.	चत्वारिंशद्धा catvāriṃśaddhā fortyfold.
त्रेधा, त्रिधा, त्रिधातु, त्रैधम् thrice, threefold.	पञ्चाशद्धा pañcāśaddhā fiftyfold.
चतुर्धा, चतुर्धम्, चतुष्कृत्वस् four times	षष्टिधा ṣaṣṭidhā sixtyfold.
षड्धा, षड्धातु six times. Comp. Sans. षोढा or षट्धा (in six ways).	सप्तत्यधा saptatyadhā seventyfold.
नवधा, नवधातु nine times (Vend. 8, 16).	अशीत्यधा aśītyadhā eightyfold.
विंशद्धा viṃśaddhā twentyfold.	नवत्यधा navatyadhā ninetyfold.
	शतधा śatadhā a hundredfold.
	सहस्रधा (for सहस्रधम्) sahasradhā (for sahasram) a thousandfold.
	अयुतधा (for अयुतम्) ayutadhā (for ayutam) ten thousandfold.

208. Sometimes, multiplicatives are formed by affixing तमम् (the sign of the superlative) to, or putting the particle कृत्वस् or कृत्वस् after, the cardinals; e. g., शतकृत्वस्-शतकृत्वस्तमम् a hundred times a hundred; सहस्रकृत्वस्-सहस्रकृत्वस्तमम् or सहस्रकृत्वस् सहस्रकृत्वस् a thousand times a thousand; अयुतकृत्वस्-अयुतकृत्वस्तमम् or अयुतकृत्वस् अयुतकृत्वस् ten thousand times ten thousand.*

209. Fractionals.

अर्धम् one-half, ½	त्रयाणां भागः three-thirds, ¾
तृतीयम् भागः one-third, ⅓	चतुर्थभागः one-fourth, ¼
द्वयोः भागयोः two-thirds, ⅔	पञ्चमभागः one-fifth, ⅕

* Mark अयुतकृत्वस्-अयुतकृत्वस्तमम् Westerg. (Vend. 8, 19).

Chapter VII.

Pronouns, Pronominal Adjectives, and their Declension.

210. Personal Pronouns—First Person.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬵𐬌, [1]𐬀𐬵𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀	𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀
Acc.	𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬌𐬎 𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀 (Y. 53, 4).	[2]𐬌𐬎, 𐬠𐬌, 𐬉𐬌, 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 𐬌𐬎 𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨, 𐬨:
Dat.	𐬀𐬎𐬉, [3]𐬉𐬀𐬎 𐬨: 𐬉𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 Y. 25, 3	𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬨-𐬨𐬨 [2]𐬌𐬎, 𐬠𐬌, 𐬉𐬌, 𐬉𐬌 𐬨: [4]𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, [5]𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀
Abl.	[6]𐬀𐬎𐬀, [7]𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀	𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬨 [6]𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, [7]𐬉𐬌
Gen.	[8]𐬉𐬀𐬎, [9]𐬉𐬌, [10]𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬎𐬉 𐬨𐬨, 𐬉 [11]𐬌𐬎𐬌	𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬀𐬨, 𐬨: 𐬉𐬌, 𐬉𐬌; 𐬌𐬎 (Y. 45, 2)

Note.—The declension of this pronoun is the same in all the three genders.

---

[1] In the Gâthâ dialect.

[2] 𐬠𐬌𐬎 Westerg., 𐬌𐬎 Geld. Yt. 15, 32.

[3] Rarely ı e. g., 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬉𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨 grant us that boon, Yt. 10, 33. Mark 𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 Y. 47, 1, 3.

[4] Geldner, Roth and Bartholomae, Yaç. 44, 15.

[5] Very seldom; e. g., 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬉𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 (Vend. 2, 1) other than me, except me. Comp. 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬉 𐬉𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 Westerg. (Vend. 2, 2)

[6] 𐬉𐬌 Prof. Justi (Vend. 13, 8). 𐬨𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 Y. 44, 13. [Index, p. 109.

[7] Vide Chr. Barthol'omae's Handbuch der Altiranischen Dia-

211. Personal Pronouns—Second Person.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬚𐬀𐬨, 𐬚𐬀, 𐬌𐬀, 𐬉𐬀𐬌 स्वम्	𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 युष्मे, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 Y. 50, 5
Acc.	𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬌 स्वाम्, त्वा	𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬚𐬀, 𐬚𐬀 युष्मान्, व:
Dat.	𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬨, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 तुभ्यम्, ते	𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 युष्माकम्, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬚𐬀, 𐬚𐬀 व:
Abl.	𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌 त्वत्	𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬚𐬀 युष्मत्
Gen.	𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬨, 𐬚𐬀 तव, ते 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 तव 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌 त्वत्	𐬚𐬀, 𐬚𐬀, 𐬚𐬀 तव 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 युष्माकम्, व:
Voc.	𐬚𐬀𐬨, 𐬉𐬀𐬌	

Note.—The declension of this pronoun is the same in all the three genders.

---

[1] Also used as the last member of a compound; *e. g.*, 𐬉𐬀 𐬚𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 a good king (he) Thou over us (see Yaç. 41, 2); 𐬚𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 (Wester.), 𐬚𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 (Geld.) whom Thou (Y. 46, 14); 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌-𐬌𐬀𐬌 who to thee (Y. 9, 3, 6, 9, 12).

[2] In the Gâthâ dialect.

[3] Sometimes repeated to express emphasis; *e. g.*, 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌 𐬚𐬀𐬵𐬌 to Thee, to Thee (see Y. 30, 1).

[4] Chiefly used in the Gâthâ dialect.

[5] Mark 𐬉𐬀 in 𐬉𐬀-𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 Wester. (see Nirang-Atash, 1).

[6] Prof. Justi; (see Afrin Paighambar Zartusht, para. 3).

[7] Mark 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 (of you two) gen. dual (Fragment 6, 1).

212. Third Person—Masculine 𐬌𐬀 ‖

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬌, [1]𐬌𐬀 ‖: [2]𐬀𐬌	[3]𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌–𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌 ‖
Acc.	[4]𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌, [5]𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌 ‖	𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌, [6]𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌 ‖ [7]𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬌, [8]𐬀𐬌𐬌
Instr.	𐬌𐬀	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀 ‖:
Dat.	[9]𐬀𐬌, [10]𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌, [11]𐬌𐬌	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀 ‖:
Abl.	[12]𐬀𐬌	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀 ‖:
Gen.	𐬀𐬌, [13]𐬀𐬌, [14]𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀 ‖	

---

[1] Mark 𐬌–𐬌𐬌 Wester. (Vend. 8, 41); 𐬀𐬌𐬌 Yt. 8, 35.

[2] Mostly used in the Gâthâ dialect; 𐬌𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌 Geld. Y. 58, 4. He (is) the Father.

[3] In the Gâthâ dialect.

[4] See Hâdokht Nask, para. 17.

[5] See Yaç. 57, 29; Yaç. 9, 22.

[6] See Vend. 19, 12; Vend. 8, 10.

[7] As the second member of a compound, when preceded by ə or 𐬀; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬌–𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌; otherwise, 𐬀𐬌 is used; e. g., 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌–𐬌𐬌 Geld. Mark 𐬀𐬌𐬌 in Y. 9, 28 𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬌𐬌

[8] Very seldom; e. g., 𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬌–𐬌𐬌 𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬌 𐬌𐬌𐬌 the Drvj, being dismayed, ran away from him (see Vend. 19, 2).

Note.—Mark 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 (Yt. 8, 22; Ys. 13, 78) nom. du.; 𐬵𐬀𐬎 (Y. 51, 2) acc. du.

213. Third Person—Neuter 𐬐𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬐𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐	[1]𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀
Acc.	𐬐𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐, 𐬐𐬌 𐬉, [2]𐬀𐬌𐬎	[2]𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬎, [1]𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀

☞ The remaining cases are like the masculine (𐬵𐬀𐬎).

214. Third Person—Feminine 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[1]𐬵𐬀𐬎, [1]𐬵𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬐, [6]𐬉𐬎	𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬎, 𐬉𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐
Acc.	𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎, 𐬉𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐	𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬉𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬉𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬐; [7]𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬉𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎
Dat.	𐬀𐬉𐬀, [8]𐬉𐬀𐬌 Gâth.	
Gen.	𐬀𐬉𐬀 (Yt. 17, 21).	

---

[1] In several instances, 𐬵𐬀𐬎 is used in the three genders; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎 masc.; 𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎 (Vend. 7, 76) fem.; 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎 (neut.).

[2] Rarely; *e. g.*, 𐬉𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬎 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬉𐬀𐬎 (Yt. 6, 6).

[3] In some rare instances; see Yaç. 55, 4.

[4] Very rarely; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬉𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬉𐬀𐬎, *i.e.*, that Druj Naçus fades away (see Vend. 9, 46).

[5] Also used in compound forms; *e. g.*, 𐬉-𐬵𐬀𐬎 Geld. Yaç. 32, 2; 𐬉-𐬉𐬎-𐬵𐬀𐬎 Geld. Yaç. 48, 6.

[6] In the Gâthâ dialect (see Yaç. 31, 10); 𐬉𐬎 is also used in the sense of acc. du. (see Yaç. 30, 3; Yaç. 44, 18).

[7] Sometimes in the common gender (see Vend. 19, 12).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

215. Crude form —एतद्— एत—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	एषः	एते
Acc.	एतम्	एतान्
Instr.	—एतेन	एभिः
Dat.	—एतस्मै	एतेभ्यः
Abl.	—एतस्मात्	एतेभ्यः
Gen.	—एतस्य	एतेषाम्
Loc.	—एतस्मिन्	—एतेषु

Note.——एतयोस् gen. du. (see Vend. 13, 41).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

216. Crude form —एतद्—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	एतत् एषः	—एतानि —एतद्वन्ति
Acc.	एतत् एषः	—एतानि —एतद्वन्ति

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine (—एतद्).

---

[1] In some rare instances, —एतद्— is used in the mas. (see Vend. 1, 26; Vend. 15, 15. 16).

[2] See Yaç. 71, 11; Yaç. 8, 11. 13; Vend. 9, 39.

[3] Rarely; e. g. एषम् एषम्; एषम् एषम्

[4] In some cases, एतद्वन्त and एतद्वन्त are also used (see Vend. 2, 39; Vend. 3, 19; Vend 7, 13).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

217. Crude form 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀 ayā—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀 / 𐬌𐬀:
Acc.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬙	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀:
Instr.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀	
Gen.	𐬌𐬀𐬴𐬀: 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬴𐬀 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌	𐬌𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀 / 𐬌𐬀𐬴𐬀𐬙𐬙

Demonstrative Pronouns.

218. Crude forms 𐬀, 𐬀𐬵—Masculine.

It should be noted that some of the inflectional forms of these pronouns are derived from 𐬀𐬵, while others, from 𐬀.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬌	𐬵𐬀𐬵 𐬌𐬀
Acc.	𐬵𐬀𐬵 𐬌𐬌𐬙	𐬀𐬵, 𐬵𐬀𐬵 𐬌𐬀𐬙
Instr.	𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀	𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬌
Dat.	𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀:
Abl.	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 / 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀:
Gen.	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬙

---

[1] Mark 𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 (Vend. 5, 13. 14).

[2] In the Gâthâ dialect. [3] See Yaç. 57, 3; Yt. 11, 8.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Loc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
	[illegible] अस्मिन	[illegible] षु

Note.—[illegible] acc. du. (Prof. Justi, Visp. II, 2); [illegible] gen. du. (Vend. 4, 48; Vend. 13, 41).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

219. Crude Forms [illegible]—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine ([illegible]).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

220. Crude forms [illegible]—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Instr.	[illegible] अनया	[illegible] आभिः
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
	[illegible] अस्यै	[illegible]

---

[1] [illegible] is also used as an enclitic at the end of certain particles, in order to give them an emphatic meaning; as, [illegible] ([illegible] + [illegible]); similarly, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

Compare [illegible] with the English neut. pronoun It, Lat. Id.

[2] Especially in the Gâthâ dialect.

[3] See Yaç. 31, 22; [illegible] (Gold.) Those to Thee (Yaç. 34, 8).

[4] Mark [illegible], e. g. [illegible] for this family (Y. 68, 14).

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Abl.		
Gen.		
Loc.		

Note.—[illegible] (Gâth.) nom. and acc. du. (Prof. Justi); [illegible] instr. du.

Demonstrative Pronouns.

221. Cases Form [illegible]—Masculine. Comp. Per. [illegible].

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.		
Acc.		Yt. 1, 1; [illegible] Vend. 19, 13
Instr.	[illegible], [illegible]	
Gen.		

Demonstrative Pronouns.

222. Cases Forms [illegible], [illegible]—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible], [illegible]	

[1] In some rare instances; e. g., [illegible] Yt. 5, 132; Yt. 10, 19; Yt. 17, 61.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible] Yt. 1, 10.

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine ([illegible]).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

223 Cases Form [illegible]—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Abl.	[illegible]	
Gen.	[illegible]	

224. Besides those (*viz.*, [illegible]), there is another demonstrative pronoun, but rarely met with; *viz.*, [illegible] (Sans. [illegible] he, she) nom. masc. and fem.; as, [illegible] (masc. nom. sing.); [illegible] (fem. nom. sing.). Mark [illegible] Vendîd. Yt. 8, 54; Yt. 19, 56.

Relative Pronouns.

225. Cases Form [illegible]—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]

---

[1] *E. g.*, [illegible] Y. 25, 1. [illegible] Yt. 17, 58.

[2] [illegible] Yt. 8, 51; [illegible]

[3] Also used in compound forms; *e. g.*, [illegible] Vend. Y. 29, 8.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Acc.	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥
Instr.	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬉𐬥
Dat.	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬉𐬥: 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌
Abl.	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬉𐬥
Gen.	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥	𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬯𐬀𐬉𐬥

𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 Geld. Y. 29, 7; Y. 44, 2; 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 Geld. Y. 44, 19; 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬌𐬀𐬉𐬥 Geld. Yt. 13, 18.

[a] As the first member of a compound when followed by 𐬯 or 𐬨; *e. g.*, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 (for 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌), 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌, (also 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬌𐬀𐬉𐬥 Geld. Yt. 4, 1); 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌. Observe that the last four forms are found in the Gâthâ dialect only. Sometimes, though very rarely, 𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌 is used separately by itself, (see Yt. 19, 87).

[b] Mark 𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌-𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌 Geld. (Yaç. 43, 14), who thy (lit.).

[c] In the Gâthâ dialect.

[d] Also 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌 Geld. whom Thou (see Yaç. 46, 14).

[e] Rarely; *e. g.*, 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨 𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨 𐬉𐬥𐬀𐬌 (Yt. 5, 5).

[f] Mark 𐬬𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬌 Yt. 10, 61.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Loc.	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 / 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥

Note 1.—𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 nom. du. (Y. 10, 3); 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 Geld. (which are) nom. du. Yt. 13, 12. Mark 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 Geld., 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 Wester., nom. du. (Yt. 1, 25); 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 gen. du. Vend. 13, 9.

Note 2.—𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 derives 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 Sans. यतर whoever of the two.

Relative Pronouns.

226. Crude Form 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 यत्—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[1]𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥, 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 यत्	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 यानि
Acc.	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 यत् / [2]𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥	[3]𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥, 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 यानि / [4]𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine (𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥).

Relative Pronouns.

227. Crude Form 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 या—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 या	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥, [1]𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 याः
Acc.	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 याम्	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥, [1]𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 याः
Instr.	𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥	

[1] Only in a few instances; *e. g.*, Vend. 5, 22, 23, 24, 25.

[2] 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥=𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 (see Yt. 15, 43).

[3] Sometimes; see Vend. 4, 45; Yt. 19, 82; Y. 65, 5; Yt. 8, [33.

[4] Mark 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 fem. nom. plu. Yt. 5, 54; Yt. 15, 24; 𐬬𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥 fem. acc. plu. Yt. 15, 39.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Dat.		
Abl.		
Gen.	[1]	
Loc.		

Interrogative Pronouns.

228 Crude Forms —, — क—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[2]	Vohd. 10, 8.
Acc.		
Instr.		
Dat.		
Abl.		
Gen.	[3]	
Loc.		

Note.—— derives Sans. कतर who or which of the two?

---

[1] Also, , though rarely; e.g., Ys. 5, 4.

[2] In the Gâthâ dialect.

[3] As the first member of a compound when followed by or ; e.g. ; (Gâth.). Mark (Yaç. 44, 3. 4. 5), what man?

Interrogative Pronouns.

229. Cuneiform Forms 𐎧𐎢𐎼, 𐎧𐎢𐎽—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐎧𐎢𐎼, 𐎧𐎢𐎽	[1]
Acc.	𐎧𐎢𐎼, 𐎧𐎢𐎽	

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine (-𐎢, -𐎼).

Interrogative Pronouns.

230. Cuneiform Form -𐎢 𐎠 – Feminine. [Geld.

Nom. Sing. –𐎢 𐎠; in compound forms, 𐎢𐎼𐎠-𐎢, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢

Acc. Sing.—𐎢𐎼𐎠 𐎠𐎢. Mark 𐎢𐎼 Geld. Y. 46, 1.

Dat. Sing.—𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 𐎠𐎢𐎼. [44, 12.

Abl. Sing.—𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎢𐎼 Westerg., 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 Geld. Y.

Indefinite Pronouns.

231. In several instances, -𐎢 and -𐎼 are also used as indefinite pronouns, meaning, 'any one, anything, whoever, whatever.' *E. g.*, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 𐎠𐎢𐎼𐎠 mas. nom. sing (Vend. 8, 100); 𐎢𐎼𐎠 mas. nom. sing. (Vend. 8, 14); 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 (Y. 9, 28); 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎢𐎼 mas. dat. sing.; 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎢𐎼 fem. dat. sing., 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 mas. gen. sing., 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎢𐎼 gen. sing., 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 (Yt. 11, 5) mas. loc. sing. -𐎢𐎼𐎠 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 𐎢𐎼𐎠 (Yt. 5, 101) loc. sing. (in each channel). 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 gen. pln. It is used in the three genders; *e. g.*, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼..... 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 mas. Vend. 18, 22); ...𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎢𐎼 neut. (Vend. 9, 18); 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼...𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 fem.

[1] *E. g.*, 𐎢𐎼𐎠𐎠𐎢𐎼 ... [illegible] (Vend. 2, 39), what lights.

(Vend. 8, 2; Vend. 15, 14). Sometimes 𐬌𐬀𐬵 and 𐬌𐬀 are subjoined to the negative particles 𐬀 and 𐬵𐬀; e. g., nom. sing. 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵 (also 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀-𐬌𐬀𐬵 Geld.), 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵; acc. sing. 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵 (Y. 34, 7). From the same base are derived 𐬌𐬀𐬵, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 and 𐬌𐬀, meaning, 'any, whatever'; e. g., 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀...𐬌𐬀 (whatever); 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 anything of low value (Vend. 18, 31); 𐬌𐬀 with any look or glance (Yt. 11, 5). Also, 𐬌𐬀 (Sans. चित्), a particle giving to the preceding word an indefinite signification, et cetera; e. g., 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 any medicine, medicine, &c.

232. Besides these, there is another particle, viz., 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, used indefinitely and always preceded by 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀; e. g., 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 Yaç. 24, 4; Visp. 4, 2; Visp. 9, 7).

Reflexive Pronouns.

233. Cases Forms 𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀 (one's own)—Mas.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀	
Acc.	𐬌𐬀	
Instr.	𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀
Dat.	𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 / 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀	
Gen.	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀
Loc.	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀	𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀

[1] In the Gâthâ dialect, e. g., 𐬌𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀 Yaç. 46, 11.

Nahr. — 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 instr. du. (Vend. 6, 46).

Reflexive Pronouns—Neuter.

234. The nom. and acc. neuter forms of these pronouns are not met with. The rest of the cases (from the instr. to the loc.) are like the masculine (𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀).

Reflexive Pronouns.

Crude Form 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 ast—Feminine.

Nom. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 Y. 46, 11.

Nom. Du.—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 (*e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 Yt. 10, 113).

Acc. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 Yt. 4, 5.

Dat. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 Gâth. [Vend. 16, 7.

Gen. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀

235. From 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 (one's own) we meet with its derivatives—

(*a*) 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, the inflected forms of which as found in the sacred writings are these:—

𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 fem. nom. sing.; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 neut. acc. sing.; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 mas. instr. sing.; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 mas. abl. sing.; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 fem. acc. plu.

(*b*) 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 Sans. स्वयं (adv.) by one's own self, of one's self.

(*c*) 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 (Westerg.), 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 (Geld.) of one's self.

236. Possessive Pronouns.—First Person.

Special base for the singular, 𐬵𐬀, 𐬵𐬀 मे, मम.

Nom. 𐬵𐬀 masc.; 𐬵𐬀 fem.; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 𐬵𐬀 my soul Y. 29, 5; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 𐬵𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 Y. 46, 8.

Dat. 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀 be ye for my help Y. 50, 7; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬙𐬀

𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 for my exterior Y. 46, 3; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 for my body Y. 9, 27.

Gen. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 mas., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 fem.; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 Y. 48, 12; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 of my wisdom Y. 44, 19.

Loc. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 in my mind Y. 32, 1.

Nom. Plu. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 certainly there are four males who are mine Vend. 18, 31.

Acc. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 mas., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 fem., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 neut.; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 Y. 48, 2; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 I do not accept these offerings of mine Yt. 5, 93; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 Yt. 14, 58; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 the man himself (or this man) will destroy my doctrines Y. 32, 10.

237. Possessive Pronouns—First Person.

Special base for the plural, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 our, ours.

Acc.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 our rejoicees Y. 40, 3; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 our questions Y. 43, 10; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 our flocks and men Y. 45, 9.

Nom.—𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 neut.; e. g., *𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 our names Yt. 1, 8.

---

* Mark that 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 is used both in the singular and the plural number; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 sing. Vend. 19, 29; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 plu. (invoke these names of mine) Yt. 13, 49.

Instr.—ⴰⵎⵓⵔ, ⴰⵎⵙⴰⵏⵎⵓⵔ; *e.g.*, ⴰⵎⵙⴰⵏⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏⵜ ⴰⵎⵓⵔ with our foremost (men) Y. 34, 1. ⴰⵎⵙⴰⵏⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏ ⴳⵓⵔ ⴰⵎⵙⴰⵏⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏ ⴰⵎⵙⴰⵏⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏⵜ with our bodies (lit. home) and lives. Y. 37, 5.

Possessive Pronouns—Second Person.

238. SPECIAL BASE FOR THE SINGULAR, ⴰⵡⴰⵔ THY, THINE.

Instr.—ⴰⵡⴰⵔ; *e. g.*, ⴰⵎⵙⵙⵏⵎⵓⵔ ⴰⵡⴰⵔ by Thine own mind Y. 31, 11. [fire Y. 43, 9.

Dat.—ⴰⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ; *e. g.*, ⵅⵉⵜⵉⵏ ⴰⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ for Thy

Abl.—ⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ; *e. g.*, ⵉⵎⵎⵓⵔⵜ ⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ from Thy love or will Y. 47, 5.

Gen.—ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ mas. and neut., ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔⵜ fem.; *e. g.*, ⵅⵉⵜⵉⵏ ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ Thy fire's flame Y. 43, 4; ⵅⵓⵔⵎⵓⵔⵜ ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔⵜ of Thy Holiness Y. 48, 8.

Loc.—ⴷⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ; *e. g.*, ⵅⵎⵎⵓⵔⵜ..ⴷⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ in Thy love Y. 33, 10; ⴷⵉⵎⵓⵔⵉⵎⵎⵓⵔⵜ ⴷⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ in Thy grace Y. 41, 4.

Nom. Plu.—ⵅⵉⵡⴰⵔ mas.; ⵜⵉⵡⴰⵔ neut.; *e. g.*, ⵅⵉⵡⴰⵔ ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏⵜ Thy praises Y. 41, 5; ⵜⵉⵡⴰⵔ ⵜⵉⵡⴰⵔ Thy Sovereign Power Y. 51, 4. [Y. 44, 12.

Acc. Plu.—ⵜⵉⵡⴰⵔ neut.; *e. g.*, ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏ ⵜⵉⵡⴰⵔ Thy blessings

Loc.—ⵉⵡⴰⵔ fem.; *e. g.*, ⵅⵎⵎⵓⵔⵜⵉⵏⵜ ⵅⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ in Thy regions Y. 43, 7.

Possessive Pronouns—Second Person.

239. SPECIAL BASE FOR THE PLURAL, ⵅⵎⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ, ⵅⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ, ⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ your, yours.

Acc. ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ, ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ mas., ⵜⵉⵜⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ fem.; *e. g.*, ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵡⴰⵔ ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏ ⵜⵉⵎⵓⵔⵉⵏⵜⵉⵏ to protect Your poor

mam Y. 34, 5. 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 Your choice Y. 46, 18; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 Your sacred wisdom Y. 34, 14.

Instr.—𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 by Your Sovereign Power Y. 31, 15.

Dat.—𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 for Your Mâthra-speaker Y. 50, 5; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 ..... 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 for Your praise Y. 50, 10; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎 .. 𐬌𐬀𐬎 to you (who are) the prophets Y. 29, 8.

Gen.—𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎 of Your adoration Y. 50, 7; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 with the mind of Your wisdom Y. 49, 6.

240. Pronominal Adjectives.

𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀 अन्य another; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 विश्व every, all; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 सर्व whole, entire, all; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 सम all, same; 𐬌𐬀𐬎 उभ both. Of these, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀 and 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 follow the declension of nouns as well as of pronouns, as will be seen from the paradigms given below.

𐬌𐬀𐬎 is inflected in the dual number.

241. **Inflected Forms** of these pronominal adjectives as found in the sacred writings :—

𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎—𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 neut. nom. sing.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 fem. acc. sing.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (Y. 58, 6) mas. acc. pln.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 neut. acc. pln.

𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎—𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 fem. nom. sing.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 (Gâth.) neut. acc. sing.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 neut. gen. sing.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 fem. gen. sing.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 Vend., 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀𐬎 Gâth. mas. loc. sing. 𐬌𐬀𐬎—𐬌𐬀𐬎 fem. nom.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬎 mas. dat.; 𐬌𐬀𐬎 mas. loc.

242. 𐬀𐬉𐬌 (other, another)—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬉𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌 (Yt. 5, 69)
Acc.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌 (Gâth.)	𐬀𐬉𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 (Gâth.)
Instr.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌
Dat.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌
Abl.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌
Gen.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 / 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌 Vend. 2, 29.

243. 𐬀𐬉𐬌—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌	[2] 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌
Acc.	[2] 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌	[3] 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine.

244. 𐬀𐬉𐬌—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Acc.	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌	𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, [4] 𐬀𐬉𐬌
Gen.		𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, [5] 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌

---

[1] 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌 ..... 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌 (Y. 9, 10) the one, ...the other.

[2] *E. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 Vend. 1, 21.

[3] 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 = 𐬀𐬉𐬌 + 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌 (see Yt. 13, 73).

[4] Sometimes, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌

[5] *E. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 Y. 19, 5.

Note.—[illegible] derives the particles [illegible] (in a different way), [illegible] Y. 51, 10 (from [illegible] + [illegible]) besides.

245. [illegible] (all, every)—Masculine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible], [illegible]
Acc.	[illegible]	[illegible], [illegible]
Instr.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Dat.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Abl.		[illegible] (Gâth.)
Gen.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Loc.	[illegible]	[illegible]
Voc.		[illegible] Y. 1, [illegible]

246. [illegible]—Neuter.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	[illegible]	[illegible]

---

[1] Also, [illegible] (though rarely). *E. g.*, [illegible] Yt. 8, 48.

[2] Other forms of the same case are [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]. —Mark [illegible] (Sirozah, 2, 28); [illegible] (Y. 16, 9).

Acc. 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀 { 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀, 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵 }

☞ The rest of the cases are like the masculine.

247. 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀—Feminine.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
Nom.	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀
Acc.	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 (𐬵𐬀)
Ins.	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬎
Gen.	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀
Loc.		𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵

248. Besides these, there are other pronominal adjectives, the bases of which are formed by subjoining the suffix 𐬵𐬀 to the pronominal bases 𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙, 𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙, 𐬵, 𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬙, 𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬵 and 𐬵.

Note.—The inflected forms of these adjectives, as given below, are such as are *actually* met with in the sacred writings.

249. 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 (strong base), 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 (weak base), the One like Thee, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 nom. sing. Y. 44, 1. Comp. Sans. त्वाद् resembling Thee.

---

[1] Rarely; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 Yt. 10, 34.

[2] Seldom; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 Y. 57, 17; 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 Yt. 5, 5.

[3] E.g., 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 every Druj Yt. 2, 11.

[4] Mark 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 Y. 71, 6.

250. [illegible], [illegible] (weak base), of such as you, of men like you; [illegible] gen. sing.; [illegible], [illegible] gen. plu.; [illegible] (orig. [illegible]) loc. plu.

251. [illegible] (strong base), [illegible] (weak base), [illegible] (fem. base), so much, this much; [illegible] mas. nom. sing.; [illegible] fem. nom. sing.; [illegible] neut. nom. and acc. sing.; [illegible], [illegible] mas. acc. sing.; [illegible] mas. instr. sing.; [illegible] mas. abl. plu.

252. [illegible] (strong base), [illegible] (weak base), [illegible] (fem. base), so much, this much; [illegible] fem. nom. sing.; [illegible] neut. nom. and acc. sing.; [illegible] mas. acc. sing.; [illegible] fem. instr. sing., [illegible] neut. instr. sing.; [illegible] gen. sing.; [illegible] gen. plu.

253. [illegible] (str. b.), [illegible] (w. b.), [illegible] (fem. base), so much, this much; [illegible] neut. nom. and acc. sing.; [illegible] fem. instr. sing.; [illegible] gen. sing. Comp. Sans. [illegible] so much.

254. [illegible] (str. b.), [illegible] (w. b.) that much; [illegible] nom. plu. Comp. Pehl. [illegible].

255. [illegible] (str. b.), [illegible] (w. b.), [illegible] (fem. base), as much as; [illegible] fem. nom. sing.; [illegible] neut. nom. and acc. sing.; [illegible] instr. sing. Comp. Sans. [illegible].

Note.—[illegible] also means "as long as, whenever" (see Vend. 6, 31, 34; Vend. 14, 11, 12; Vend. 15, 46).

256. [illegible] (str. b.), [illegible] (w. b.) how much; [illegible] mas. nom. sing. (in what capacity, what was his position) Y. 19, 20; Y. 20, 4: [illegible] mas. acc. sing.; [illegible] neut. nom. and acc. sing.; [illegible] nom. pla. Comp. Per. [illegible]

Note.—[illegible] = orig., [illegible] + [illegible].

CHAPTER VIII.—THE VERB.

257. The crude forms of the verbs are either primitive or derivative. The primitive forms are the roots, which require some change or addition before the inflectional terminations can be affixed. The derivative verbs are the Frequentative or Intensive, the Desiderative, the Denominative and the Causal.

258. Verbs have three numbers: singular, dual and plural; and in each number three persons: first, second and third. The dual number denotes, as it does in declension, 'two'; its forms are rare. The terminations which denote the persons in the different numbers are called **personal terminations**.

259. Primitive roots are conjugated in three voices, *viz.*—

(*a*) In the **Parasmaipada**, *i.e.*, 'active voice' (literally 'voice or step for another').

(*b*) In the **Atmanepada**, *i.e.*, 'reflective voice' (literally 'voice or step for one's self').

(*c*) In the **Passive** voice.*

260. The Parasmaipada implies that the action of the verb tends to a person or thing other than the agent (objective). The Atmanepada expresses that the action of the verb is confined to the agent (subjective). In other words, "the Parasmaipada may be said to be used, when the fruit or consequence of the action expressed by the verb accrues to a person or thing other than the agent; whereas the Atmanepada is employed when the fruit or consequence of the action expressed by the

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 75.

verb accrues to the agent;" e. g., वर्त्त् to ask; वर्त्तयति (Parasmai.) he asks (for somebody else); वर्त्तयते (Atmane.) he asks (for himself); वर्त्तयतु (Parasmai.) do thou (for somebody else); वर्त्तयस्व (Atmane.) do thou (for thyself).

This rule is, however, by no means universally valid, and the right use of the two padas (viz., Parasmai. and Atmane.) can only be learnt by a long and careful study of the Avesta literature.

261. Many roots throughout all tenses and moods are conjugated both in the Parasmaipada and in the Atmanepada; some only in the Parasmaipada; others again in the Atmanepada.

"The Parasmaipada and Atmanepada are formally distinguished by two sets of personal terminations, one of which is added in the Parasmaipada, whereas the other set is always added in the Atmanepada."*

262. The conjugation of the verb comprises eight forms, partly tenses and partly moods. These are the present (including the present subjunctive), the imperfect† (including the imperfect subjunctive), the imperative, the potential, the future, the perfect, the aorist, and the precative or benedictive. Of these, the first four, viz., the present, the imperfect, the imperative and the potential are called **conjugational tenses and moods**, or, according to Dr. Kielhorn, **special tenses**, because the personal terminations of these four forms are very seldom attached directly to the crude form of a primitive root. In most cases they are added to special inflective bases derived from the root. While the last four, viz., the future, the perfect, the aorist and the precative are called **non-conjugational**, or, according to Dr. Kielhorn, **general tenses**, because their base is formed according to one general rule for all verbs of whatever conjugation; in other words, all verbs of whatever class in these tenses are, as it were, of one common conjugation.

Observation.—In the future, the perfect, the aorist and the precative, the formation of the passive voice is generally the same

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sans. Grammar, 3rd Ed., pp. 78-79.

† Also called the First Preterite.

as that of the Atmanepada or reflective voice, while in the first four tenses and moods, the formation of the Atmanepada differs from that of the passive, as will be seen hereafter.

Ten Classes of Conjugation.

263. Before the personal terminations are affixed to roots, "an inflective special base must be formed out of the root. Ten different rules are, therefore, propounded for forming verbal bases out of roots in the first four tenses and moods. All verbs are, for this reason, arranged under ten classes, as they follow one or the other of these rules. In the non-conjugational tenses there is only one general rule for forming the base."*

Formation of the Special Base in the Ten Classes.

264. Special base of roots of the First Class.—Change the vowel of the root to its guṇa equivalent before every termination of the four tenses and moods, and affix अ; *e. g.*, rt. भू, unchangeable special base भो; rt. नी, unchangeable special base ने, &c. Comp. Sans. unchangeable special base शप् (rt. शप्) Similarly, भव (rt. भू); सर्व (rt. सर्व).

Note 1.—Sometimes, though rarely, the radical vowel is changed to its vriddhi equivalent; *e. g.*, कारि, हारि (rt. हृ); प्रावृषेण्य (rt. प्रावृष् वर्ष); अवश्यकारिता (rt. कृ)

Note 2.—This affixal अ is generally lengthened before any termination beginning with ए or ओ; *e. g.*, नयसि, नयसि-एष्यति (orig., नय + असि-एष्यति); नयामः (orig., नय + मस्), &c.

265. Special base of roots of the Second Class.—Change the radical vowel to its guṇa equivalent before the **strong terminations** only. Before all the other terminations the original vowel of the root must be retained; *e. g.*, rt. अद्, special weak base अद्;

* Comp. Professor Sir Monier William's Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 110.

strong base ಶ್ವಿ. Comp. Sans. weak base इ; strong base ए (rt. इ to go); weak base विद्; strong base वेद (rt. विद् to know).

266. It should be noted that the **strong terminations** are those of the present and imperfect singular of the three persons of the Parasmaipada, of the imperative first person singular, dual and plural of the Parasmaipada and the Atmanepada, and the imperative third person singular of the Parasmaipada.

Note.—Sometimes, though rarely, the terminations of the present third person singular, and first person plural of the Atmanepada, and of the imperfect third person singular of the Atmanepada, cause the vowel of the root of the second class to be strengthened; i. e., changed to its guṇa equivalent; e. g., ಅಧಿಶೇತೇ (rt. ಶೀ), ಅಧಿಶೇಮಹೇ Gold., ಅಧ್ಯಶೇತಾಂ, ಅಧಿಶೇರತ (rt. ಆಸ್); ಅಧಿಶೇತೇ (rt. ಶೀ); ಅಧ್ಯಶೇಷ್ಟಾಂ (rt. ಶಾಸ್)

267. Special base of roots of the Third Class.—Reduplicate the root.* Before the strong terminations the radical vowel is generally guṇated; e. g., rt. ಭೂ to see; special weak base ಬಭೂವ್; strong base ಬಭೌವ್.—Comp. Sans. weak base हु; strong base होत्, (rt. हु to sacrifice).

Note.—Reduplication consists in the doubling of a root according to certain rules. That portion of a reduplicated form which is prefixed to the root is called the reduplicative syllable; e. g., ಬಭ in ಬಭೂವ, ಜಗ್ಮ in ಜಗ್ಮಿವಾನ್, ಜು in ಜುಹೋತಿ, &c. Prepositions prefixed to reduplicated verbal forms take their places before the reduplicative syllable: e. g., ಪರಿಜಗ್ಮಿವಾನ್ (rt. ಗಮ್); ಪರಾಬಭೂವ (rt. ಭೂ); ಪ್ರಜುಹೋತಿ (rt. ಹು)

268. Special base of roots of the Fourth Class.—Affix ಯ to the root, the vowel of which is left unchanged; e. g., rt. ಪುಷ್ಯ, unchangeable special base ಪುಷ್ಯಯ್; rt. ನೃತ್, unchangeable

* For a list of reduplicated forms, see pp. 168-171.

special base ꣱ꣻꣾꣽ. Comp. Sans. unchangeable special base सुप्त (rt. सुप्). Similarly, क्षिप्त (rt. क्षिप्); लिप्त (rt. लिप्).

Note.—This affixal ꣱ꣻ, when followed by the termination ending in ꣽ or ꣾ, is generally changed to ꣾ꣱ꣻ, but when followed by ꣱ꣾ, ꣾ꣱ꣽ꣱ꣾ or ꣽꣾ꣱ꣾ, to ꣱ꣻ꣱.

269. Special base of roots of the Fifth Class.—Affix ꣾꣽ to the root. Before the strong terminations (see p. 164) ꣾꣽ is gunated, *i. e.*, changed to ꣾ꣱ꣽꣽ; *e. g.*, rt. ꣾꣽꣾꣽ, special weak base ꣾꣽꣾꣽ; strong base ꣾ꣱ꣽꣾꣽ. Comp. Sans. weak base सुन् strong base सुनो (rt. सु), weak base पृण्वु; strong base पृण्णो (rt. पृण्व).

270. Special base of roots of the Sixth Class.—Affix ꣱ꣻ to the root, the vowel of which remains unchanged; *e. g.*, rt. ꣱ꣽꣾꣽ, unchangeable special base ꣱ꣻ꣱ꣽꣾꣽ. Comp. Sans. unchangeable special base तुद (rt. तुद्).

Note.—This affixal ꣱ꣻ, when followed by the termination ꣾꣾ, ꣾ꣱ꣽ꣱ꣾꣾ, ꣽꣾ or ꣾꣽꣾ, is lengthened, *i.e.*, changed to ꣱ꣻꣻ.

271. Special base of roots of the Seventh Class.—Insert ꣱ꣻꣾ before the final radical in the strong terminations (see p. 164) and ꣾ or ꣾꣾ in all the others; *e.g.*, rt. ꣱ꣻꣽꣾꣽ, special strong base ꣱ꣻꣾꣽꣾꣽ; special weak base ꣱ꣻꣾꣾꣽꣾꣽ. Comp. Sans. special strong base युनज्; special weak base युञ्च (rt. युज्).

272. Special base of roots of the Eighth Class.—Affix ꣽ to the root; ꣽ is gunated before the strong terminations only (see p. 164); *e. g.*, rt. ꣾꣽ; special weak base ꣽꣾꣽ; special strong base ꣾ꣱ꣽꣾꣽ. Comp. Sans. weak base तनु; strong base तनो (rt. तन्).

Observe that the root ends in a consonant, especially in ꣾꣽ; *e. g.*, rt. ꣾꣽꣾꣽ, rt. ꣾꣽꣾꣽꣾꣽ, rt. ꣾꣽꣾꣽ Sans. कृत्, to multiply.

273. Special base of roots of the Ninth Class.—Affix ন্া (sometimes, ন্া*) to the root before all the terminations; *e. g.*, rt. ধৃ, unchangeable special base ধৃন্া, similarly, পৃচ্ (rt. পৃ). In Sanskrit the weak base is formed by adding নী (changeable to নী), and the strong one by না (changeable to না) to the root; *e. g.*, special weak base কীর্ণী, strong base কীর্ণা (rt. কৃ).

Note.—This affixal ন্া is always vriddhied, i.e., changed to ন্া before the termination ধ্ব, ন্ব, ধ্বস্ব or ষ্কৃধ্বম্; *e. g.*, ধ্বস্ধৃন্াধ্ব, ধ্বস্ব্যস্ধৃন্াধ্ব, &c.

274. Special base of roots of the Tenth Class.—Affix ন্যস্ to the root; *e. g.*, rt. ধন, unchangeable special base ন্যস্ধনয়. Comp. Sans. special base গণয় (rt. গণ to number).

The root undergoes the following changes:—

(*a*). A penultimate short vowel is generally gunated; *e. g.*, ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা); ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা); ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা).

(*b*). A final vowel is mostly changed to its vriddhi form; *e. g.*, ন্যস্ধ্বস্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বা); ন্যস্ধ্বধ্বস্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বা).

(*c*). A penultimate ন্া is optionally lengthened; *e. g.*, ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা); ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা)

(*d*). The root remains unchanged when it contains more than two consonants; *e. g.*, ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা); ন্যস্ধ্বন্ধ্বন্ধ্বা (rt. ধ্বন্ধ্বা), &c.

275. Some roots form their special base in two ways, *i.e.*, in two different classes; *e. g.*, rt. ধ্বন্ to hide, to protect; ধ্বস্ধ্বন্ধ্বন্

* Especially in the singular; *e. g.*, ধ্বস্ধ্বস্ধ্বন্ধ্বা, ধ্বস্ধ্বস্ধ্বন্.

1st class; 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 6th class. To which class or classes a root belongs can be known from a long and regular course of study of the Avesta language.

Comp. Sans. roots सु (to join) and ऋ (to go). The former belongs to the second and to the ninth class; and the latter, to the first and to the fourth class—Dr. Kielhorn.

276. From this it will be clearly seen, that the special base of roots of the first, fourth, sixth, ninth and tenth classes (*i.e.*, of those classes in which the special base ends in 𐬌) remains, with some slight modifications, *unchanged* throughout all the forms of the conjugational tenses and moods in Parasmaipada and Atmanepada; hence it is called the *unchangeable special base*. The special base of roots of the remaining five classes has generally two forms, *a strong base* and *a weak base*. The strong base is used in the strong terminations mentioned above (see p. 164), the weak base in the weak terminations. This base is called the *changeable special base*.* *E. g.*

Note.—In Sanskrit the characteristic mark of the ninth class is as aforesaid, नी, which in the strong base is changed to ना; *e. g.*, rt. सु; weak base सुनी; strong base सुना.

Rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬎 2nd class, 'to praise'; special weak base 𐬵𐬀𐬎; special strong base 𐬚𐬵𐬀𐬎.

Rt. 𐬴𐬌 5th class, 'to do'; special weak base 𐬵𐬴𐬌; special strong base 𐬚𐬵𐬴𐬌.

Rt. 𐬴𐬀 7th class, 'to know': special weak base 𐬴𐬀 or 𐬴𐬁𐬀; special strong base 𐬴𐬀𐬀.

Rt. 𐬀𐬎 8th class, 'to extend'; special weak base 𐬀𐬎; special strong base 𐬚𐬀𐬎.

In roots of the 3rd class the radical-vowel is guṇated in the special strong base; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 (rt. 𐬐𐬀 to see).

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 80.

When the root ends in ས, the final vowel is either shortened or dropped in the special weak base; *e. g.*, གཙང་སྦྲ་བ (rt. གཙང་ to leave); གདགས (redupl. weak base གདགས་, rt. གདགས་ to give).

277. Alphabetical list of reduplicated forms of roots.

Roots.	*Reduplicated Forms.*
ཡིན to be	ཡིན་ཏེ (orig., ཡིན + ས)
ཐུགས to love	(ཐུགས་ཐུགས་ནས་) weak base; ཐུགས་ཐུགས་པོ strong base
སྐྱེ to love	སྐྱེས་སྐྱེས་པོ str. b.[1]; སྐྱེ་བོ w. b.[1]
བྱེད to do	(བྱས་བྱས་ནས་) w. b.; བྱེད་པོ
གཙང་ to propitiate	གཙང་བྱེད་[2], གཙང་བྱེད་པོ
འགྲོ to go	འགྲོ་འགྲོ་ས་ str. b.; འགྲོ་ w. b.
ཉལ to be awake	ཉལ་ཉལ་ས་, ཉལ་ཉལ་བ་[3]
སྐྱེ་ to bewail	སྐྱེ་སྐྱེ་ས་ Y. 32, 13.
ཐོགས་ to hold	ཐོགས་ཐོགས་པོ
ཁྲ to pay the penalty for	ཁྲོགས་ཁྲོགས་པོ str. b.; ཁྲོག་ w. b.
ཤེས to know	ཤེས་ཤེས་པོ str. b.; ཤེས་ཤེས་པ་, ཤེས་པོ w. b.

[1] w. b., *i. e.*, weak base; str. b., *i. e.*, strong base.

[2] In གཙང་བྱེད་; see Yt. 13, 24, 40.

[3] In ཉལ་ཉལ་བ་ pres. partic. mas. nom. sing. (see Yt. 13, 24).

[4] In ཐོགས་ཐོགས་པ་ desider. pres. partic. mas. nom. sing. (see Y. 32, 8).

[5] In གཙོ་སྐྱེས་ Geld. (see Yt. 10, 141).

Roots.	*Reduplicated Forms.*
to kill, to smite	str. b.; w. b.
to go	str. b.; w. b.
to live	Y. 39, 1.
to solicit	Vend. 15, 13.
to bring forth	
to leave, to obtain	
to invoke, to worship by offering	
to invoke, to call	
to remove, to pass over	
to be able	str. b.; w. b.
to mould, to fashion	
to torment	str. b.; w. b.
to nourish	
to tear	*
to create, to give	str. b. w. b.;
to hold fast	Y. 44, 15.
to see	w. b.; str. b.
to see	

* E. g., intens. pot. 3 sing. (Vend. 18, 39).

Roots.	*Reduplicated Forms.*
𐬵𐬀𐬎 to hold	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎, 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎
𐬨𐬀𐬵 to perish, to disappear	𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 (Y. 32, 15)
𐬎𐬀𐬵 to remove, to cleanse	*𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 str. b.
𐬵𐬀𐬎 to fight	𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎 str. b.; 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 w. b.
𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬬𐬀 to fight	†𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎
𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 (akin to 𐬀𐬎) to fill	𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀
𐬵𐬀 to carry	(𐬵𐬀𐬵)𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 w. b.; 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 str. b.
𐬵 to fear	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀
𐬀 to be	{ 𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀 w. b.; ‡𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 str. b.
𐬵𐬀 to think	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀
𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (orig., 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 𐬬𐬀) to approach	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀
𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎 to kill, to cause, to perish	𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀
𐬞𐬀𐬵𐬀 to endeavour	𐬞𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 w. b.; 𐬞𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 str. b.
𐬵𐬀 to be glad	𐬵𐬀𐬵 Yt. 13, 40.
𐬵𐬀 to wound	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Y. 47, 4.
𐬵𐬀 to empty	§𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀

* Mark the guṇating of the vowel of the reduplicative syllable; e. g., 𐬞𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Yt. 8, 43.

† In 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎 Yt. 10, 8. Comp. Sans. दिवा battle.

‡ 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 in 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Wester., (Guld. 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀) Yt. 13, 2; 𐬵𐬀𐬵 in 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Yt. 13, 150.

§ Mark the lengthening of the vowel in the reduplicative syllable.

Roots.	*Reduplicated Forms.*
𐬵𐬀 to come out, to die	𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀[1]
𐬵𐬌 to grow	𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌[1] w. b.; 𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬵 str. b.
𐬥𐬀𐬙 to speak	𐬥𐬀𐬙𐬥𐬀𐬙 w. b.; 𐬥𐬀𐬙𐬥𐬀𐬙𐬌 str. b.
𐬵𐬀𐬙 to smite	𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬵𐬀𐬙 w. b.; 𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬌 str. b.
𐬌𐬎 to know	𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎[2], 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬌[3]
𐬀𐬌𐬙 to be, to enter	𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙
𐬌𐬵𐬀 to work	𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀
𐬌𐬵𐬀 to serve, to attend	𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀[4]
𐬵𐬌 to go	𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌
𐬵𐬛𐬀 to stand[5]	𐬵𐬛𐬵𐬛𐬀[6]
𐬀𐬙𐬀 to watch	𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬙[7]
𐬵𐬌 to hear	𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌[8]
𐬀𐬵 to obtain, to become worthy	𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵
𐬀𐬵 to guard	𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵[9]

[1] Mark the lengthening of the vowel in the reduplicative syllable.

[2] Gâthâ form 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬥𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎 Y. 30, 8; 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎 (orig., 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎+𐬌𐬎; 𐬌𐬎 being dropped).

[3] See Y. 45, 8 (𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎 desiderative form).

[4] Also 𐬵𐬛𐬵𐬛𐬀 (𐬀 being dropped, 𐬛 changed to 𐬵); *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬥𐬵𐬛𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (orig., 𐬵𐬀𐬥𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬀).

[5] Sometimes, though rarely, 𐬵𐬛𐬵𐬛𐬀; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬥𐬵𐬛𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Westerg. Yt. 14, 21.

[6] *Vide* 𐬵𐬛𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Y. 58, 4 (orig., 𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬛𐬀𐬵𐬀+𐬵𐬀).

☞ It should be observed that *all these* roots are not of the third class. The major portion of the reduplicated forms given above is such as is used in the perfect, intensive, frequentative and desiderative verbs.

278. It will be seen from these reduplicated forms that—

(1) An unaspirate letter of a root is, in its reduplicative syllable, represented by the corresponding unaspirate letter; *e. g.*, ಖಿದ್, reduplic. ಖಿದಿದ್. Comp. Sans. rt. खिद् to split, reduplic. चिखिद्.

(2) A guttural by the corresponding palatal (guttural aspirate by palatal unaspirate); *e. g.*, rt. ಘನ್, reduplic. ಜಘನ್. Comp. Sans. rt. कन् to love, reduplic. चकन्.

(3) When a root commences with two consonants, only the first consonant in its unaspirate form is generally repeated in the reduplicative syllable; *e. g.*, rt. ಸ್ತುತ್, reduplic. ತಸ್ತುತ್; rt. ಸ್ಮಿತ್ reduplic. ಸಿಸ್ಮಿತ್. Comp. Sans. rt. चाय् to shine, reduplic. चिकाय्.

(4) ಧ್ವ and ಭ್ರ substitute ಬ in the reduplicative syllable; *e. g.*, rt. ಧ್ವನ್, reduplic. ದಧ್ವನ್; rt. ಭ್ರಮ್, reduplic. ಬಭ್ರಮ್, or ಬಿಭ್ರಮ್*

279. It should also be noted that the reduplicated forms, in which the radical vowel is guṇated, are generally strong bases; *e. g.*, weak base ಜಘ್ನ್, strong base ಜಘನ್; weak base ಮುಮುಚ್, strong base ಮೋಮುಚ್; weak base ದದ್ಯ್, strong base ದೇದ್ಯ್, &c.

Comp. Sans. special weak base सुह्; special strong base सुहो (rt. हु to sacrifice).

The occasional omission of the radical ಸ್ marks the weak base; *e. g.*, strong base ತೇತ್ತೀಕ್, ತೇತ್ತೀಯ್, weak base ತಿತ್ತಿಕ್,

* Comp. Dr. Kellgren's Sans. grammar, 3rd Ed., pp. 80-81.

; strong base , weak base ; strong base , weak base , &c.

Terminations of Conjugational Tenses and Moods.

280. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	मि	[1] वस्	[2] मस्; मसि Ved.
2	[3] सि	थस् [4]	थ, [5] [6] थ
3	ति	तस्	अन्ति, [7] अन्ति

281. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[8] ए	(महे) महि [9], वहे

---

[1] *E. g.*, (2nd class) see Y. 46, 16.

[2] In the Gâthâ dialect, , ; *e. g.*, ; (Y. 46, 9); *cf.* कृ करोति to understand.

[3] Changeable to (according to para. 45). [Per. Du.

[4] Mark in (Yt. 8, 22), used in the 3rd

[5] Only in rare instances; *e. g.*, ,

[6] Only where the special base ends in ; *i.e.*, in verbs of the 1st, 4th, 6th, 7th and 10th classes.

[7] Sometimes, especially in the Gâthâ dialect, the final is changed to ; *e. g.*, ,

[8] *E. g.*, ,

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2	[1]𐬀𐬌𐬎 ते	[2]𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎 (Gâth.) ध्वे
3	𐬀𐬌𐬎 ते	𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬌, [3]𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌 अन्ते

Note.—The present subjunctive is formed by inserting 𐬌 between the special base and the personal termination. Comp. in Sans. the pres. subjunc. base दोह from दुह् 2nd class; भवा from भू 1st class; सुवा from सु 6th class; युनज from युज् 7th class.

282. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	[4]𐬐 अम्	[5]𐬌𐬌 व	𐬌𐬐 म
2	[6]𐬍 स		𐬌𐬍 त
3	[7]𐬎 त	[8]𐬎𐬎	[9]𐬎, 𐬎 अन्

---

[1] Changeable to 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎 (according to para. 45).

[2] 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬎 desiderat. 2 plu. Atmane. You desire to hold fast (rt. 𐬎𐬎𐬎 see Y. 48, 7; 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 𐬐𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬎 pres. 2 plu. Atmane. Ye slay (rt. 𐬐𐬎𐬎, 𐬌𐬐𐬎𐬎) Y. 53, 6.

[3] Only where the special base ends in 𐬌; *i.e.*, in verbs of the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th classes; and the termination 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬐 is used before the enclitic particle 𐬌𐬍; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬐𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬍 𐬌𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬐𐬎𐬎𐬎𐬌𐬍

[4] *E. g.*, 𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬐 (rt. 𐬌𐬐 6th class; 𐬌𐬌 + 𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬐 = 𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬐) see Yt. 15, 40.

[5] Changeable to 𐬌𐬌 (according to para. 39).

[6] Mark Sans. तम् 2nd Per. Dual; *e. g.*, अजनतम्.

[7] Only where the special base ends in 𐬌; *i.e.*, in verbs of the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th classes; in the rest of the classes, 𐬎 is suffixed.

283. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	...		[1]...नहि, ...नहि (Gâth.)
2	[2]...था		...ध्वम् ...ध्वम्
3	[3]...त ...	...तम्, ...ताम्	...न्त, [4]...न्त ...न्त.

Note.—The imperfect subjunctive is formed by inserting ...य between the special base and the personal termination. Comp. Sans. ...यात् from rt. ...1st cl., ...येत् from rt. ...2nd cl., &c.

284. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[5]...आनि	...आम ...आम
2 no termination (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); ...हि, ...द्धि (in all the others)		...त ...
3	...तु ...	...न्तु, [6]...न्तु ...न्तु

[1] *E. g.*, ...नहि (Y. 32, 2); ...नहि (Y. 35, 3). Also ...नहि; *e. g.*, ...नहि Y. 35, 3.

[2] Changeable to ...स (according to para. 45).

[3] In the Gâthâ dialect, though rarely, ...ष; *e. g.*, ...ष cried aloud (rt. ...).

[4] Only where the special base ends in ...य.

[5] In some rare instances, especially in the second class ...आनि instead of ...आनि is affixed; *e. g.*, ...नि, ...नि (orig., ...+...नि 2nd cl.; also ...नि). Verbs of the fourth and tenth classes generally substitute ...य for ...आनि; *e. g.*, ..., ..., &c.

285. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𑀅𑀆𑀳 ए	𑀅𑀤𑀸𑀫𑀲𑁆 आमहै
2	[1]𑀲𑁆𑀯𑁆, [2]𑀲𑁆𑀯 स्व	[3]𑀥𑁆𑀯𑁆, 𑀥𑀯𑁆𑀴 ध्वम्
3	𑀢𑁆𑀭𑁄 तार्	𑀢𑁆𑀭𑁄𑀲𑁆𑀫, [1]𑀢𑁆𑀭𑁄𑀲 तारस्

286. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𑀬 (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); 𑀬𑁆𑀲𑀁 (in the rest of the classes).	𑀫𑁄 (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); 𑀫𑁄𑀲𑀁 (in the rest of the classes).
2	𑀬𑁄 (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); 𑀬𑀲𑁆, 𑀬𑁄𑀲 (in the rest of the classes).	𑀫𑀥𑁆 (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); 𑀫𑀥𑁄𑀲𑀁 (in the rest of the classes).
3	𑀬𑁆 (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); 𑀬𑁆𑀲𑀁 (in the rest of the classes).	𑀬𑀁 (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); 𑀬𑁆𑀁, 𑀬𑁄𑀲𑀁 (in the rest of the classes).

[1] Only when the special base ends in 𑀅.

[2] Changeable to 𑀲𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀬 (according to para. 45).

[3] 𑀥𑁆𑀯𑁆, which is used in the Gâthâ dialect only, is not a separate verbal termination, but an abridged form of 𑀥𑀯𑁆𑀴 (orig. 𑀥𑀲𑁆𑀯𑁆) by the dropping of 𑀲𑁆; or rather the euphonic change of 𑀲𑁆𑀯 to 𑀯𑁆 before the final 𑀥 (*see* para. 48); *e. g.*, 𑀲𑁆𑀢𑀼𑀢𑀺𑀫𑀸𑀦𑁄 𑀥𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀁, 𑀥𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀫𑁄, 𑀥𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀫𑀲𑁆𑀫, 𑀥𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀫𑀤𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀫𑀲𑁆𑀫𑀺 (*cf.* 𑀫𑀸𑀤𑁆𑀯𑁆𑀫𑀲𑁆𑀫𑀺).

Note.—ईते 3rd Per. Dual; *e. g.*, ईषेथामाम् (Yt. 19, 83), ईषेथामाम्बभूवथुः (Yt. 19, 82); ईषेथाम् (rt. ईष् to create).

287. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1.	ईय		ईमहि
2.	ईथास्, ईष्ठास्		ईध्वम्
3.	ईत, ईष्ट	ईयाताम्, ईषाताम्	ईरन् (in the 1st, 4th, 6th, 9th and 10th conjugational classes); ईरन्, ईरन् (in the rest of the classes).

Note 1.—Terminations beginning with consonants may be called **consonantal terminations**, those beginning with vowels, **vowel terminations**.

Note 2.—The above-mentioned verbal terminations invariably lengthen their final vowels in the Gâthâ dialect.

Caution.—When final letters of special bases of different kinds of verbs meet with initial letters of personal terminations, the rules of euphonic changes (*Sandhi*) must be observed.

---

[1] See तनादिकृञ्भ्य उः (8th class) P. 19, 7; rt. कृ.

[2] Gâthâ form ईरन्; *e. g.*, ईरन्नेवामनुषाय-दक्षम् (rt. मन्) Y. 68, 6; ईरन्नेवामिषम् (rt. मिष्) Y. 28, 5.

[3] A rare termination; *e. g.*, ईरन्नन्तरायम् (3rd class); see Afringân Gâhâmbâr, para. 4.

[4] *E. g.*, ईतेहतम् (Vend. 8, 10); ईतेहतम् Geld. Yt. 13, 3); ईषेथाम् ... दक्षम् Y. 44, 15 (rt. दक्ष् to meet).

[5] *E. g.*, ईरन्नेवामनुषाय-दक्षम्, ईरन्नेवामिषम् (Yt. 19, 122).

Conjugation of Verbs.

288. It should be noted that all the verbal forms given in the following paradigms do not actually exist in the Avestaic writings. Some of these are inserted with the sole object of giving help and facility to students in learning the grammar. As already mentioned, the Avesta literature being not so extensive as the Sanskrit is, only certain forms are found of different conjugations; the duals are fewer still. The examples of verbal forms given below each paradigm are such as are *actually* met with in the sacred writings.

Paradigms of the First Conjugation.

Root 𐬨𐬀𐬉 to carry—First Class.

Unchangeable special base 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎

289. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1.	𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬌		𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬱𐬌
2.	𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬌		𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀
3.	𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬢𐬌	𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀	𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬢𐬀

290. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬉𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬉𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀. In the Gâthâ dialect, 𐬥 is sometimes dropped; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬱𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬉𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬌 (rt. 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎 to solicit).

1st Per. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬱𐬉𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬙𐬌 (Gâth.)

2nd Per. Sing.—𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬉, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬱, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬯𐬉, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬯𐬉, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯

2nd Per. Plu.—𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬯𐬉, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀 (rt. 𐬨𐬀𐬭 to discern); 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬯𐬉, 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯𐬀𐬱𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬀 to know); 𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬯

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Dual.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] Y. 46, 7; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible] (also, [illegible]; rt. [illegible] Sans. अद् to eat wrongly).

291. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1.	[illegible]		[illegible]
2.	[illegible]		
3.	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

292. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to rule).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Dual.—[illegible] (Y. 9, 5), [illegible] (Yt. 13, 3) [illegible] (Y. 44, 15).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

293. Present Subjunctive.

The present subjunctive is formed by inserting [illegible] before the personal terminations of the present tense. It is often used for the future; *e. g.*, [illegible] will flow; [illegible] will come, &c.

Note.—Comp. Ved. [illegible] (pres. subjunc. from [illegible] (see Prof. Benfey's Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 197).

294. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (for [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible] (for [illegible])

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 50, 7 (Mills; rt. [illegible] to drive).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] [53.

3rd Per. Dual.—[illegible] Vend. 9, 54; Vend. 18.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

295. Present Subjunctive—Âtmânepada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]; [illegible] (Geld.), [illegible] (Wester.) I may approach (Mills) Y. 38, 8.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] Geld. Y. 36, 1.

3rd Per. Sing.—अवनमत्, अवनमीत्, -दमिष्यत् अवनम (rt. दम्—दमि to bow to).

3rd Per. Plu.—अवनेमुस्, अवनेमतम्, -दमिष्यन् अवनेमुः, अवनेमतम्, अवनेमन् Geld.

296. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

ध्यान In Sanskrit, the temporal augment अ is always prefixed in the imperfect; e. g., अबोधत, अबोधत, अबोधन्त, &c. In Avesta it is rare; e. g., 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎.

When one or more prepositions are prefixed to a root, the augment अ takes its place after the preposition or prepositions and immediately before the root; e. g., प्रेक्षिष्यत् (orig., प्रेक्षिष्यत्+अत्); प्रेक्षिष्यत् (orig., प्रेक्षिष्यत्+अत्); प्रेक्षिष्यत्-प्रेक्षिष्यत् (rt. ईक्ष्). Sanskrit strictly follows the same rule; e. g., उदवसत् (=उद्+अवसत्); समुदवसत् (=सम्+उद्+अवसत्), &c.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1.	𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎		𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎
2.	𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎		𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎
3.	𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎	𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎	𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬎

297. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—प्रेक्षिष्यत्-प्रेक्षिष्यत् (rt. ईक्ष्); अवसत्तम् (for अवसत्तम्); दमिष्यत्, दमिष्यत्-दमिष्यत्, दमिष्यत्-दमिष्यत्

2nd Per. Sing.—प्रेक्षिष्यत्-अवसत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत्

2nd Per. Plu.—अवसत्तम्

3rd Per. Sing.—प्रेक्षिष्यत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत्-दमिष्यत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत्-दमिष्यत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत्, प्रेक्षिष्यत् (rt. दमिष्यत्).

[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to destroy); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to lift up).

3rd Per. Dual.—[illegible] Yt. 13, 77; [illegible] Wester. Vend. 7, 53.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to deceive); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to approach); [illegible] (an euphonic change of [illegible] to [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to destroy).

298. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1.	[illegible]	[illegible]
2.	[illegible]	[illegible]
3.	[illegible]	[illegible]

299. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] we accepted (Y. 32, 2).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to learn).

3rd Per. Dual.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to struggle, to fight) Yt. 19, 46.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (orig. [illegible]; rt. [illegible] to rule).

300. Imperfect Subjunctive.

The imperfect subjunctive is formed by inserting स् before the personal terminations of the imperfect. It is mostly used in the Parasmaipada and in the sense of (1) the imperative, (2) the aorist, (3) the future, and (4) the benedictive (or like the English auxiliaries 'may, let'); *e.g.*, कृणुष्व, कृणवाव, -धीर, कृणोतु, कृणवाम, [illegible], &c. Its conjugational forms in the 3rd Per. are more frequent than those of the 1st and 2nd Per.

NOTE.—Comp. Ved. भरात् (Av. [illegible] imperfect subjunctive from भरत कृणोत्); यच्छात (Av. [illegible] imperfect subjunctive from यच्छत Av. [illegible]).—Vide Prof. Benfey's Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 197.

301. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmai.

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Wester. (for [illegible]) Vt. 24, 8.

3rd Per. Sing.—कृणोत्, कृणवत्, कृणवत्, कृणवदेव...सरत्, कृणवत्, कृणवत्, कृणवत्, कृणवत्...सीत्, कृणवत् (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); कृणवत्...

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to know); [illegible], [illegible] कृणवन्...सीर्

302. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1.	[illegible]	[illegible]
2.	[illegible]	[illegible]
3.	[illegible]	[illegible]

303. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to lead); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], also, [illegible] Yt. 5, 130 (rt. [illegible] to conquer).

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to strive to) Y. 38, 3; [illegible], [illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to hasten); [illegible] Wester. [illegible] Geld. (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to know); [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible])

3rd. Per. Sing.—[illegible] (see Y. 33, 9); [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

304. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

1.	[illegible]	[illegible]
2.	[illegible]	[illegible]
3.	[illegible]	[illegible]

305. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] Wester; [illegible] Geld. (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (Y. 28, 10) do thou grant;

[illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to cling, to lean).

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Gâth. (rt. [illegible] to obtain).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]; rt. [illegible] to rule).

306. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]		[illegible]
2	[illegible]		[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

307. Other verbal forms of the same —

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to conquer); [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to go).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible] Gelk. Yt. II. 13 (orig. [illegible], rt. [illegible] to go); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to fall down, to fly); [illegible]

308. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		[illegible]

	Singular.	Plural.
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

309. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (Y. 58, 6).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to rejoice, to rest).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] [illegible] (rt. [illegible] वन् to praise, to venerate).

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible] Gold. (Yt. 16, 5); [illegible] Y. 44, 15 (rt [illegible] to meet).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

310. Remarks on some irregular Roots of the First Class:—

Rt. [illegible] (गम् to go) changes its final to ज in all forms, except [illegible] (Y. 30, 8); [illegible] (Y. 44, 15) imperf. 3 du. Atmane.; [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) (Y. 44, 16) and the precative forms, (e. g., [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.). The same root is changed to [illegible] 6th cl. and also [illegible] 1st cl.; e.g., [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] (the radical vowel being dropped).

Rt. [illegible] (वद् to grow) forms [illegible] pres. 3 sing. Atmane. (thou growest); [illegible] imperf. 3 sing. Atmane.

Rt. [illegible] (तक्ष् to form, to fashion) lengthens its vowel in [illegible], dropping the characteristic स् of the class in the first two forms. Comp. Sans. कामति (rt. कम् to go); गूहति (rt. गुह् to hide).

Rt. [illegible] (अद् to go) substitutes [illegible] for [illegible] (the characteristic mark of the class) in [illegible] (pres. 3 sing. Parasmai.); [illegible] (pot. 3 du. Parasmai.)

Rt. [illegible] (Ved. ऋध् to attain) forms [illegible] pot. 1st Plu. Parasmai.

Rt. [illegible] (खन् to dig) forms its special base in two ways, viz., [illegible] 1st cl. and [illegible] 2nd cl.; e. g., [illegible], &c., 1st cl.; [illegible] 2nd cl.

Rt. [illegible] (to eat, to drink) substitutes [illegible] in some of its forms; e. g., [illegible].

Paradigms of the Second Conjugation.

Root [illegible] To Praise—Second Class.

Special strong base [illegible]; Special weak base [illegible]

311. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

312. Other verbal forms of the same :—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] Weber, [illegible] Gild. Y. 43, 8.

1st Per. Du.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to wish) Y. 46, 16.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] Y. 43, 4 (rt. [illegible]) thou guardest; [illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] Yt. 10, 27 (rt. [illegible] to blow away); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to abide); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to stretch); [illegible]. Mark the substitution of vriddhi for guṇa in the last two forms.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] for to dwell); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to meet, to go to); [illegible] Westerg.; [illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

313. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible] (see Frag. VII, 2).
2	[illegible]	
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

314. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] Geld.; [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. Y. 10, 19; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] वस् to wear, as clothes).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Geld.; [illegible] Geld. Yt. 10, 38 (for [illegible]). Compare Sans. विशते; the termination अन्ते of the 3 plu. Atmane. loses its त्.—Dr. Keilhorn.

315. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible]) Geld. Y. 71, 15 (thou shalt utter).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Ved. वक्षति (also, [illegible], see Yt. 2, 11); [illegible]

316. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to come; [illegible] =[illegible]=[illegible] Y. 31, 2).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 43, 6 (rt. [illegible] शास् to proclaim, to utter).

317. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]

	Singular.	*Plural.*
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

318. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] thou hast passed (rt. [illegible]).

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] you said (Y. 43, 11).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible]; [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to cry out); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to join, to yoke); [illegible] (Y. 9, 8); [illegible], [illegible] (Y. 29, 3).

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to approach).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

319. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2	[illegible]?	[illegible]
3	[illegible] (Yt. 17, 18)	[illegible]?

320. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (see Wester; Fragment IX., 2).

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] we considered or regarded (Y. 46, 13).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to grow); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to weep); [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Yt. 13, 93.

---

* Mark the insertion of [illegible] before the termination.

321. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] Y. 46, 6 (rt. [illegible] to go); [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]; [illegible][2] (rt. [illegible] to go).

322. Imperfect Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 30, 7. Thou camest (rt. [illegible]).

323. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible] (Vend. 18, 16).
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

324. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible]; rt. [illegible] to go); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to flee from); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible], orig., [illegible] for to dwell).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]; [illegible] declare to us (Milla); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to go).

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible] (protect us); [illegible] ([illegible]) do ye teach (me).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]);

Vend. 20, 12 (rt. to smite);

3rd Par. Plu.— (rt. to go); (rt. to come); (rt. to assemble); (rt. to go); (rt.)

325. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		?
2		(Gâth.)
3	(Y. 28, 9)	

326. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—,

2nd Per. Sing.—.—Mark (rt.) Vend, 19, 6.

2nd Per. Plu.— (rt.)

327. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

328. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—

3rd Per. Sing.— (also,),

[illegible], [illegible] (pr. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible] (pr. [illegible], [illegible] to teach); [illegible] (pr. [illegible]), [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]—Mark [illegible] Gold., V. 42, 6 (pr. [illegible] to approach).

329. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

330. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 12, 6. [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Paradigms of भू, to be—Second Class.

It is to be noted that this root is somewhat irregular in its conjugation; its inflected forms in the Atmanepada are not to be found.

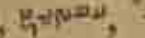
331. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	[illegible], [illegible] अस्मि		[illegible], [illegible] स्मः
2	[illegible], [illegible] असि		[illegible] स्थ
3	[illegible], [illegible] अस्ति	[illegible] स्तः	[illegible] सन्ति [illegible]

332. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 80 11; Y. 81, 22; Y 58, 7.

333. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

3rd Par. Sing. 

334. Imperfect Subjunctive.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2		
3		

335. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
3		

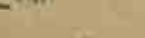
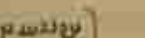
336. Precative or Benedictive.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

337. Perfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
	 (Geld.)	Gâth.

338. Perfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.†

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1			
3		Yt. 13, 12.	Y. 60, 11.

* In Yt. 14, 46; it is used in the sense of the plural; e. g.



† F. Justi and A. Hovi acque.

339. Remarks on some irregular roots of the Second Class.

Rt. ꠀꠀꠇ (वस् to will, to desire) drops the radical ꠀ in all weak forms; *e. g.*, ꠀꠇꠀꠇꠀ, ꠀꠇꠀꠇꠁꠀ, ꠇꠀꠀꠀꠀ, ꠁꠀ (also, ꠁꠀꠀꠇ), &c. Comp. Sans. वास्य, वसि, वोढ; but वस्य, वस, वस्यन्ति, &c. (rt. वस् to wish).

ꠇꠀ (शी to lie down, to stretch) gunates (sometimes vriddhies) its vowel in all the forms; *e. g.*, ꠇꠀꠇꠀꠀ (pres. 3 sing. Parasmai.; ꠀꠀꠇꠀꠇꠀꠀ, ꠀꠀꠇꠀꠇꠀꠀ. Comp. Sans. शेषे, शेते (rt. शी to lie down); सीव्यति (rt. सिव् to join).

Roots ꠁꠀꠇ (हन् to smite) and ꠇꠀꠀ (स्तु to praise) insert ꠀ before the personal terminations in some of their forms; *e. g.*, ꠀꠀꠇꠀ ꠇꠀꠀꠀ, ꠁꠀꠀꠀꠇꠀꠀ imperf. subjunc.; ꠇꠀꠀꠀꠁꠀꠇ pres. subjunc.; ꠇꠀꠀꠁꠀꠇ imperf.; ꠇꠀꠀꠁꠀꠇ imperf. subjunc.; ꠀꠀꠇꠀꠀꠁꠀꠇ—ꠀꠀꠀ pot. 3 sing. &c. Comp. Ved. हन् to strike. Rt. ꠁꠀꠇ, in some of the weak forms before vowel-terminations, drops its radical ꠀ and changes its ꠇ to ꠁ (according to para. 28); *e. g.*, ꠇꠀꠁꠀꠁ pres. 1st per. sing. Atmane. (orig., ꠇꠀ + ꠁꠀꠇꠀꠁ); ꠇꠀꠁꠀꠁꠀꠁ Pres. 3 plu. Parasmai. Comp. Sans. घ्नन्ति, घ्नन्त (rt. हन् to strike). This root (viz., ꠁꠀꠇ) is mostly used in the Atmanepada.

ꠀ-ꠀ (आ-इ to approach) forms imperf. subjunc. 3 sing. Parasmai. ꠇꠀꠀꠀꠀ

Rt. ꠇꠀ, ꠇꠀꠀ, (रुद् to weep) forms ꠀꠀꠇꠀꠀꠀꠀ (wept, lamented) imperf. 3 sing. Atmane.; but, ꠁꠀꠀ, ꠀꠀꠇꠀꠀꠀꠀ,

Rt. ꠇꠀꠀꠀ (शास् to proclaim, to teach) changes its special base by adding ꠀ in some of its forms; *e. g.*, in ꠇꠀꠀꠀꠀꠀꠁꠀꠀ (Gîtâ.)

[illegible] (Gāth.), [illegible] (Gāth.),

Rt. [illegible] (वस् to wear, as clothes) inserts [illegible] in [illegible],

[illegible] (Gold. [illegible] Y. 58, 5). [illegible]

Rt. [illegible] (to be) drops its radical [illegible] in weak forms except

Paradigms of the Third Conjugation.

Root [illegible] TO GIVE, TO CREATE, TO MAKE—THIRD CLASS.

Special strong base [illegible], Sans. दद, दध.

Special weak base [illegible], Sans. दद्, दध्.

Note.—[illegible] is irregular in some of its conjugational forms, and in several instances, especially in the Gāthā dialect, the personal terminations are subjoined directly to the root. The irregular verbal forms given in the following paradigms are such as are *actually* found in the texts.

340. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible] (Y. 68, 1)
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible] Westerg. Y. 46, 8	[illegible] Y. 46, 1 [illegible] Y. 32, 16

Note.—Comp. Sans. [illegible] (rt. द्रा) [illegible] (rt. पा)—3 plu. In Sanskrit the termination अन्ति loses its त after roots of the 3rd class.

341. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—

2nd Per. Sing.—

2nd Per. Plu.—Mark Y. 50, 5 (Sans. pt.) Ye advance with friendliness (Mills).

3rd Per. Sing.— (rt. to see); (rt. to change).—Mark the guṇating of the reduplicative syllable instead of the radical vowel.

3rd Per. Plu.—

342. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
3	Gold. Y. 14, 19	

343. Other verbal forms of the same:—

3rd Per. Sing.— Ye. 17, 6.

3rd Per. Plu.—

344. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

2nd Per. Sing.— (for) Ye. 24, 22

3rd Per. Sing.— (rt. to see). Ye. 10, 13.

345. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

3rd Per. Sing.— (orig., rt. to read).

346. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	
2	[illegible]	
3	[illegible] / [illegible], [illegible]	[illegible] / [illegible]

347. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig.: [illegible])

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

348. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible], [illegible]	
3	[illegible]	

349. Other verbal forms of the same:—

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible])

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

350. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 44, 15.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible]; rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], (Y. 46, 13); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to see); [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

351. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3	(Y. 53, 8) (Y. 31, 17)	

352 Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.— Y. 31, 5 (rt.)

2nd Per. Sing.— .—Mark turn away the look, Ys. 17, 15 (rt. to see).

2nd Per. Plu.—

353. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2	(Ys. 10, 32) (Y. 50, 2)	

---

* See Y. 51, 2, 7, 17. Comp. Sans. (rt. to give), and (rt. to place).

† Similarly, (orig. rt.)

354. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	(Y. 44, 14)		
2			
3	(Y. 29, 3) (Y. 44, 10)	(Yt. 13, 76)	

355. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.—Y. 35, 3 (rt.)

2nd Per. Sing.—Mark V. 43, 10—a shortened form of (rt.)

3rd Per. Sing.— (rt. to see).

3rd Per. Plu.— Wester. Vend. 8, 37.

356. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

2			
3	(Y. 43, 2) (Afr. 1, 4)		

357. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.— Gold.

3rd Per. Sing.— ,

358. Remarks on some irregular roots of the Third Class:—

Roots (to give) and (to place, to create, to

do) form their special weak base ... Sans. ... and ... Sans. ...; the final ... and ... combine with ... to ..., which, in the Gâtha dialect, occasionally becomes ammit, i.e., ...; e. g. ... Geld. Y. 51, 19 (for ...).

Rt. ... (चित् to cleanse) gunates the vowel of the reduplicative syllable and not the radical vowel; e. g., ... Comp. Sans. अचिक्रदत्, अचेतिष्टम् (rt. चित् to cleanse).

Rt. ... (हा to abandon) generally shortens its vowel in the weak forms, rarely in the strong ones. E. g.

Strong forms.—..., ..., ... Exception:—.... Weak forms ..., ...

Rt. ... (to pay the penalty for) gunates its vowel in ... imperf. 3 plu. Parasmai.

Rt. ... (स्था to stand) drops, in some of its forms, the vowel of the reduplicative syllable; e. g., ... (pres. 1 sing. Parasmai, orig., ...); ..., ..., ..., ... (orig., ...).

Paradigms of the Fourth Conjugation.

Root ... to work—Fourth Class.

Unchangeable special base ...

359. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	...	...
2	...	...
3	...	..., ...

360. Other verbal forms of the same :—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (see para. 50). The Gâthâ dialect occasionally drops the verb-termination; e. g., [illegible] (I look upon), [illegible], [illegible], &c.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible] Yt. 8, 22.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (they find satisfaction); [illegible].

—Mark the shortening of [illegible] to [illegible] in the last two words.

361. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

362. Other verbal forms of the same :—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (for [illegible]) Yt. 10, 106.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌—Mark the shortening of 𐬀𐬉 to 𐬀 in the last word.

363. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌

2nd Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌-𐬯𐬀 Vend. 8, 21; Yt. 3, 17. Notice the dropping of the subjunctive 𐬯.

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌

364. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌—Mark 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌 Y. 45, 3 I shall conceive (it).

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌-𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌 (rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵)

365. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.		*Plural.*
1	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀	Y. 35, 3. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀
2	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀		𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀
3	𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀		𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀

366. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌-𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌; 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀. Westerg. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 Geld. Ys. 13, 23 (rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬵𐬀𐬉𐬙𐬀 to grow).

367. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

368. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Pur. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 35, 3.

2nd Pur.—Mark [illegible] Westor. Ya. 22, 34 (rt. [illegible] to die).

3rd Pur. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Pur. Plu.—[illegible] they held (him) in derision (rt. [illegible] to despise); [illegible]

369. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

3rd Pur. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to cut, to wound); [illegible], [illegible] (Geld. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Pur. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to grow).

370. Imperfect Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

3rd Pur. Sing.—[illegible] Westor., [illegible] Geld.

371. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2.	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

372. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st. Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to sink into); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]; rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (Wester.) stay for me; [illegible] (Prof. Jnan; rt. [illegible])

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 8, 3.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 35, 6; [illegible]

373. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible] Y. 10, 20	[illegible]

374. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to sit).

375. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

376. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—

3rd Per. Sing.—

377 Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2		
3		

378. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.—Mark Y. 9, 21.

3rd Per. Sing.—; ; (rt.)

3rd Per. Plu.— Yt. 10, 122.

379. Remarks on some Irregular Roots of the Fourth Class.

Roots (वृ to know) and (युध् to fight) lengthen their vowel; *e. g.*, ; ; ; ; .—Comp. Sans. नाषति; rt. नष् to be intoxicated; ऋच्छति; rt. ऋछ् to go.

Rt. (स्ना to wash, to perform the ceremony of bathing) shortens its vowel; *e. g.*, , , &c.

Rt. (नश् to perish, to be lost) substitutes for in the imperat. 2 sing. Parasmai.; *e. g.*, , ,

Rt. (वर्ध् to grow) drops its in all forms,

except [illegible] and [illegible]; e. g., [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]), &c.

Rt. [illegible] (to weave) drops its [illegible] in the strong forms; e. g., [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Rt. [illegible] (वा to cut, to wound) mostly drops its final vowel; e. g., [illegible], [illegible] imperf. subjunc. 3 sing. Parasmai.; [illegible] (Westerg.) imperat. 2 plu. Atmane. Comp. Sans. [illegible] (rt. वा to sharpen; special base [illegible]). In Sanskrit roots ending in वा drop their वा before the characteristic mark of the class.

Rt. [illegible] (ह to die) gunates its vowel; e. g., [illegible]

Roots [illegible] (to look for), [illegible] (to prepare) and [illegible] (to adhere, to mingle) gunate their radical vowel in [illegible]. — Comp. Sans. [illegible] (to be cautious) 4th cl., special base [illegible].

Paradigms of the Fifth Conjugation.

Root [illegible] to do—Fifth Class.

Special strong base [illegible]; Special weak base [illegible]

380. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible] Geld. Y. 10, 13	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

381. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing. [illegible] (rt. [illegible])

---

* Mark the weakening of the special base.

3rd Per. Sing.— [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible].—Mark [illegible] Gold. (Yt. 14, 41).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible].—Mark [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Gold. Yt. 13, 26.

382. Present Tense—Ātmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	*[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

383. Other verbal forms of the same :—

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

Wester. [illegible] Gebl. (rt. [illegible] = to come, to fall to).

384. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible]

385. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	† [illegible]	[illegible]

---

* [illegible] is euphonically inserted as in [illegible]

† Also, [illegible] Y. 9, 15. Mark the insertion of [illegible] to the strengthened form of the special base.

	Singular.	Plural.
3	[illegible]	Weber [illegible] / [illegible]

386. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Gâth. (rt. [illegible] to beguile).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]);

[illegible], [illegible]...

387. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	Plural.
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

388. Imperfect Subjunctive-Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

389. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	Plural.
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible] / [illegible] (Vend. 2, 25)	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

* Mark the strengthening of the special base in the weak terminations; see Y. 30, 9; Y1. 10, 51.

† Compare Sans. अक्षित (rt. क्षि to squeeze out).

‡ Similarly, [illegible] Y. 9, 3. 4. 7. 9.

390. Other verbal forms of the same :—

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 9, 28.

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Gald. Yt. 13, 34.

391. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	Y. 40, 1. [illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

392. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

393. Other verbal forms of the same :—

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (cf. [illegible])

394. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

* In the Gâthâ dialect the verb-terminations are occasionally added directly to the root. Mark [illegible] Y. 9, 2 (cf. [illegible] Sans. सु to express the Hom juice).

395. Remarks on some Irregular Roots of the Fifth Class.

Roots क्षि (क्षि to hear) and इन्वि (to give, to deliver) insert ु and ू respectively after व in some of their forms; e.g., शृणुवस्, शृणुमस्, शृणुवः, शृणुमः, शृणुतात्, शृणुताम्, शृणुयात्.

Rt. क्षि (to hear) changes its special base to शृणो imperat. 3 sing. Parasmai.; शृणुधि, शृणुहि imperat. 2 pla. Parasmai.

Rt. कृ (to do, to make) adds ु in some of its forms, after guṇating ऋ of the special base; e.g., करवाणि pres. subjunc. 2 sing. Parasmai.; अकरवम् imperf. subjunc. 3 sing. Parasmai.; कुर्वीय pla.; कुरुष्व imperat. 2 sing. Parasmai.

Rt. सु (to express the Soma juice, to prepare) inserts ु in सुनुताम् imperat. 2 sing. Atmane.

In some instances of weak forms, the final ु of the special base is optionally lengthened; e.g. अप्राक्षीत्, अप्राक्षुः, अक्रौषीत्, अक्रौषुः...अस्रवीत्.

Paradigms of the Sixth Conjugation. Root मृष् to ask—Sixth Class.

Unchangeable special base मृच्छ

396. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	मृच्छामि		मृच्छामः

Y. 44, 1 मृच्छावः

	Singular.	Dual.	Plural.
2			
3			

397. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—Weber, Yt. 5, 50.

1st Per. Plu.— (rt. to wither);
Gold., Y. 10, 15 (rt. to let flow).

2nd Per. Plu.— you learn; you wish;
Gold. (Y. 32, 4).

3rd Per. Sing.— (but Vend. 9, 2);
Gold. (also, ; orig.,); he flees from. (rt. to go).

3rd Per. Du.— (Y. 57, 2).

3rd Per. Plu.— ; also, (they find);

398. Present Tense—Atmanêpada.

1		
2		
3		

399. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; also, [illegible] Y. 46, 2. I cry (to Thee)

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible]

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (Y. 53, 6) ye slay; rt. [illegible],

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible] Vend. 8, 10.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

400. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 31, 2 (rt. [illegible] to live).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (the penultimate [illegible] being dropped; orig., [illegible]).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

401. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

402. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]	[illegible]

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
2	[illegible]		[illegible]
3	[illegible]		[illegible]

403. Other verbal forms of the same :—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible]—Mark [illegible] Wester., [illegible] Gold. X. 45, 9 (rt. [illegible]).

1st Per. Du.—[illegible] Yt. 15, 40 (rt. [illegible] to live).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] ([illegible] Gold.); [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to sit). Mark [illegible] (Vend. 18, 30) with the augment [illegible] (see para. 200).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (they wept); [illegible], [illegible], [illegible].

404. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

405. Other verbal forms of the same :—

1st Per. Sing.—Mark [illegible] (Vend. 2, 2) with the augment [illegible].

2nd Per. Sing.—Mark [illegible] Wester. (Vend. 2, 1) Thou didst converse.

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺, 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑀺, 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺-𑀅𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺, 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑀺, 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲 (rt. 𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺 to weep, the radical 𑀫 of the class being dropped); 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀫 (rt. 𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺)

3rd Per. Plu.—𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼 (they wept); 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺 Wester., 𑀫𑀧𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺 Geld. Y. 32, 14 (rt. 𑀲𑀦𑁆𑀢 to enter, to come).

406. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆𑀣, 𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆𑀣𑀸𑀬, 𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆𑀣, -𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲 𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲 Ya. 13, 129 (orig. 𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆-𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲); 𑀫𑀧𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆𑀣, 𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆𑀣

3rd Per. Plu.—𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀫𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼, 𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼 (rt. 𑀓𑀫𑀼-𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼).

407. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𑀅𑀳𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀬𑀁	𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀬𑀁
2	𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺	𑀫𑀧𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺
3	𑀫𑀧𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺	𑀫𑀧𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀼

408. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st. Per. Sing.—𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀫𑀺 I will vie (Justi and Mills).

1st Per. Plu.—𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀫𑁂

2nd Per. Sing.—𑀫𑀧𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺 (Y. 43, 10); 𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺 (rt. 𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺 𑀅𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺 to rise up). 𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺 See thou; 𑀫𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺 teach thou.

2nd Per. Plu.—𑀫𑀧𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀼 (orig. 𑀫𑀧𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺-𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼)

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀢𑁆𑀣

3rd Per. Plu.—𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀫𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼, 𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼 Wester., 𑀅𑀓𑀫𑀺𑀲𑁆𑀲𑀼 Geld.

409. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𑀅𑀳𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀬𑁂	𑀫𑀸𑀓𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀬𑁂

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

410. Other Verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], also [illegible] (Weber,—) being dropped; see Vend. 2, 8).—Mark [illegible] do Thou hear (Y. 49, 7); [illegible] Y. 53, 8 (for [illegible]; rt. [illegible])

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (Y. 45, 1).

411. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]		[illegible]
2	[illegible]		[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]*	[illegible]

412. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible], [illegible]

---

* See Geld. Y. 12, 5. 6. Compare Sans. [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to strike).

413. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1			
2			
3			

414. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.— (Prof. Justi) Yt. 24, 12.

3rd Per. Sing.— , , , ,

3rd Per. Du.— (Vend. 8, 10).

3rd Per. Plu.—

415. Remarks on some Irregular Roots of the Sixth Class:—

Rt. (Sans. सद् to sit) changes its vowel to ; *e.g.*, , , (also, and) ; , , —Comp. Sans. सीदति (rt. सद् to sit).

Roots (कृत् to cut) and (to kill, to destroy) insert a penultimate vasal ; *e.g.*, , , &c. , , &c. Comp. Sans. कृन्तति (rt. कृत् to cut ; unchangeable special base कृन्त).

Roots (to hear) and (विश् to enter, to become) lengthen their vowels ; *e.g.*, imperat. 2 sing. Atmane. ; plu. ; imperf. 3 sing. Atmane. ; , , , &c.

Rt. 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 forms 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 Gâth. (Y. 29, 1) imperf. 2 plu. Atmanep.; and, with the prefix 𐬨𐬌, 𐬨𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 (Vend. 9, 2) pres. 3 sing. Parasmai.

Rt. 𐬵𐬌 (𐬵𐬀 to wish), when preceded by the prefixes 𐬨𐬌𐬨𐬀 and 𐬀𐬨𐬌, drops its vowel; *e.g.*, 𐬨𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀 (orig., 𐬨𐬌𐬨𐬀 𐬨𐬌𐬵𐬌) imperat. 2 plu. Parasmai.; 𐬨𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀, 𐬨𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀, &c.

Seventh Conjugation.

416. The verbal forms of roots of the seventh class in the four conjugational tenses and moods are very few. The following are such as are found in the Avestaic writings:—

Roots 𐬴𐬀 to know, 𐬵𐬁 to find, 𐬯𐬁 to empty.

Special strong base 𐬴𐬀𐬉𐬨, 𐬵𐬁𐬉𐬨, 𐬯𐬁𐬉𐬨

Special weak base 𐬴𐬌𐬉𐬨, 𐬵𐬌𐬉𐬨, 𐬯𐬌𐬉𐬨

417. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬴𐬌𐬉𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨 (rt. 𐬨𐬨 to attribute).

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬨𐬀𐬴𐬌𐬉𐬨 (rt. 𐬴𐬀 to know); 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬉𐬨 (rt. 𐬵𐬁 to find, to obtain); 𐬨𐬀𐬯𐬌𐬉𐬨, 𐬨𐬀𐬯𐬌𐬉𐬨𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬯𐬁 to empty); see paras. 28-29.

418. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Plu.—𐬴𐬌𐬉𐬨𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬉𐬨 (rt. 𐬴𐬀, 𐬴𐬨 to know).

Paradigms of the Eighth Conjugation.

Root 𐬨𐬀, Sans. तन् to draw—Eighth Class.

Special strong base 𐬨𐬀𐬉𐬨; Special weak base 𐬨𐬀𐬨

419. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

420. Other verbal forms of the same:—

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] multiply).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to promote, to increase); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to outrun; see para. 58).

421. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

422. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (Y. 10, 7.) I will draw (his soul) off...—(the personal termination is dropped).

423. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

* [illegible] is euphonically inserted.—Compare. [illegible]; see para. 58.

424. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	अकरवम् अकरवाव	अकरवाम
2	अकुरु अकुरुतम्	अकुरुत
3	अकुरुत अकुरुताम्	अकुरुवन्

425. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	करवाणि करवाव	करवाम
2	कुरु कुरुतम्	कुरुत
3	करोतु कुरुताम्	कुर्वन्तु

426. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	करवै करवावहै	करवामहै
2	कुरुष्व कुरुवाथाम्	कुरुध्वम्
3	कुरुताम्	कुर्वताम्

427. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	कुर्याम् कुर्याव	कुर्याम
2	कुर्याः कुर्यातम्	कुर्यात
3	कुर्यात् कुर्याताम्	कुर्युः

428. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	कुर्वीय † कुर्वीवहि	कुर्वीमहि
2	कुर्वीथाः कुर्वीयाथाम्	कुर्वीध्वम्
3	कुर्वीत कुर्वीयाताम्	कुर्वीरन्

* Similarly, हन्याम् हन्याव Vsnd. 18, 70 (rt. हन् to slay).

† See कुर्वीय-कुर्वीहि T. 19, 7.

Paradigms of the Ninth Conjugation.

Rṭ. 𐬭𐬀 क्री to bless, to love—Ninth Class.

Unchangeable special base 𐬭𐬀𐬌

429. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬀	𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀 (Yt. 12, 3)
2	𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀	𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬎
3	𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀	𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀

430. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬀 Vend. 18, 31 (rt. 𐬭𐬀, Sans. ज्ञा to bear offspring).

1st Per. Plu.—𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀 Geld., 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 Wester. (Y. 38, 4)—substituting 𐬵 for 𐬌—the characteristic mark of the [class.

2nd Per. Sing.—𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀 Vend. 18, 30.

3rd Per. Sing. 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬎, 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀, 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀 Y. 10, 13; 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Wester., 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Geld. Yt. 10, 143; 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀 Wester., -𐬱𐬀𐬵𐬀 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 Geld. Yt. 10, 68.

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 (Justi); rt. 𐬭𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀-𐬵𐬀 to [shave off.

431. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀*	𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀
2	𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀	
3	𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬱𐬀	𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀

* Similarly, 𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬎, 𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀; 𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀-𐬭𐬀𐬙𐬀 I fight against.

432. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌 Y. 49, 12.

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎 Wester. (Vend. 9, 47) instead of the 1st Per. Sing.

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬌𐬙 to cover).

433. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵	𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵
2	𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬵	𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵
3	𐬎𐬙𐬀𐬵	𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵

434. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬎 Vend. 22, 1 (rt. 𐬌𐬎 to make).

2nd Per. Sing.—𐬎𐬙𐬀𐬵 (Y. 46, 14); 𐬱𐬙𐬀𐬵 (Y. 44, 6) Justi.

435. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2	𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬱	𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬙𐬀𐬵
3	𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵*	𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬱

436. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬎𐬙𐬀𐬵, 𐬎𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬎, 𐬎𐬙𐬀𐬵 Geld. Y. 10, 5.

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬉𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎...𐬱 (rt. 𐬌𐬌𐬎...𐬱 to lift up).

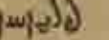
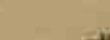
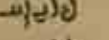
437. Imperfect Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬱𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬎 Y. 30, 6 (rt. 𐬌𐬎 to choose).

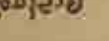
---

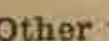
* Similarly, 𐬱𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬎𐬎𐬀, 𐬱𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬎 (rt. 𐬀𐬵𐬱𐬵𐬌𐬙 to confess oneself) —the radical vowel is dropped.

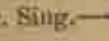
438. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

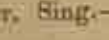
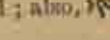
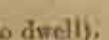
439. Other verbal forms of the same:—

2nd Per. Sing.—  Y. 28, 11 (rt.  to fill up).

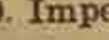
3rd Per. Sing.—  Y. 10, 1; also,  Y. 10, 1 (rt.  to dwell).

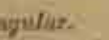
3rd Per. Plu.—  Yt. 13, 157.

440. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

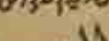
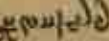
	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

441. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—  (rt.  to fight).

2nd Per. Sing.—  (rt.  to shave off).

442. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

443. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 28, 9. Observe the insertion of [illegible] before the characteristic mark of the class; rt. [illegible] to anger, to provoke. (The same might be taken as a denominative verb.)

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (Justi); rt. [illegible] to select.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Yt. 8, 58.

444. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	

Other forms of 3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible])

445. Paradigms of the Tenth Conjugation.

It should be borne in mind that the verbal forms of roots of the tenth class are equally applicable to causals derived from the same roots. In Sanskrit the conjugation of the causal agrees almost entirely with the conjugation of the roots of the tenth class; *e. g.*, rt. चुर (10th cl.) to steal; चोरयति he steals (pres. 3 sing. Parasmai.); चोरयति he causes to steal (pres. 3 sing. caus. Parasmai). Moreover, the verbal forms in the four conjugational tenses and moods given directly below the paradigms are not all of the tenth class, many of them being causals; *e. g.*, [illegible] caus. (rt. [illegible] 5th cl.); [illegible] caus. (rt. [illegible] 6th cl.); [illegible] caus. (rt. [illegible] 1st cl.), &c.

Root [illegible] (Sans. छिन्द्, छिद्) to cut, to break asunder—Tenth Class.

Unchangeable special base [illegible]

446. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

447. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.— (rt. to attain); Yt. 5, 63. Wester.— an abridged form of (rt. to disappear).

1st Per. Plu. Y. 41, 1; Y. 35, 7.

2nd Per. Sing.—

2nd Per. Plu.— (Yt. 13, 38).

3rd Per. Sing.— (Geld.) Yt. 10, 18, 29; to ponder (rt.); he causes (me) (rt.); he orders or fixes (caus. of); he frightens; caus. of ; (caus. of); (Wester.), (Geld.) Yt. 9, 2 he makes (them) flow (caus.) Y. 45, 6 (rt.); Yt. 9, 3 (rt. to grow).

3rd Per. Du.— Yt. 9, 3 (rt. to grow).

3rd Per. Plu.— (Geld.),

they marry; ... Y. 48, 10 (rt. to break, to destroy).

448. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1		
2		
3		

449. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.—

2nd Per. Sing.— (Prof. Jusii) Yt. 8, 10.

3rd Per. Sing.— Vend. 18, 46.

3rd Per. Plu.— they come flying (rt.); ; (rt. to wound); Geld. Yt. 13, 30.

450. Present Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

2nd Per. Sing.—

3rd Per. Sing.— (caus.) Yt. 10, 86. (when) will he turn (us); rt. to go.

3rd Per. Plu.—

451. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

2nd Per. Sing.— (caus.) Y. 71, 16.

3rd Per. Plu.— (rt. Lat. *Mederi*).

452. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	Plural.
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

453. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (Weber.) Yt. 38, 32.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] caus. (rt. [illegible] to sit down); [illegible], [illegible] (Geld.); [illegible] (with the temporal augment [illegible]).—Mark [illegible] caus. (rt. [illegible]).

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible] Yt. 13, 79; rt. [illegible] Ved. [illegible] to overcome.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (?[illegible]) they showed (the paths).

454. Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	Plural.
1.	[illegible]	[illegible]
2.	[illegible]	[illegible]
3.	[illegible]	[illegible]

455. Other Verbal forms of the same:—

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (caus.) Yt. 13, 89, [illegible], [illegible] he established (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Geld. Y. 44, 20 (rt. [illegible] to grow, to flourish).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Vend. 7, 38; [illegible]

456. Imperfect Subjunctive—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (he will benefit), [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to pull down, to demolish); [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Geld., [illegible]—Mark [illegible] Geld. Y. 28, 6 (orig., [illegible]).

457. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

458. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible]

1st. Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 28, 6; [illegible] Yt. 10, 34; [illegible]

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Geld., [illegible]

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Prof. Justi (Yt. 13, 147); [illegible]

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] let (him) inculcate (it) Y. 35, 6 (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

459. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

460. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. Yt. 9, 26 (rt. [illegible]).

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. (for [illegible]) Visp. 8, 1.—Rev. Dr. Mills.

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible]

461. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	[illegible]	[illegible]
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

462. Other verbal forms of the same:—

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (caus.) we can herald forth (Y. 49, 9); rt. [illegible] to hear.

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]) to sit down).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible], also, [illegible] Yt. 19, 80 (cf. [illegible] ✓ to be extinguished); [illegible] he should bring up or nourish;—[illegible] is dropped from the last two forms [illegible] (cf. [illegible] ✓ [illegible], to expel, to oppose).

3rd Per. Du.—[illegible] Yt. 13, 89.

463. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
2	[illegible]	[illegible]
3	[illegible]	[illegible]

Remark.—From the verbal forms given above in the four conjugational leaves and moods from p 178 seq., the Avesta student must have observed, that some roots are conjugated in the Parasmaipada, others in the Atmanepada only; while a major portion of them in both the **padas**. A few notable examples of such are given below:—

464. Verbs that are conjugated mostly in the Parasmaipada.

[illegible] (to obtain) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to lie) 2nd cl.; [illegible] (to empty) 7th. cl.; [illegible] (to come out, to pollute) 6th cl.; [illegible] (to dig) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to cut) 6th cl.; [illegible] (to seize); [illegible] (to flow) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to run) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to hear) 6th cl.; [illegible] (to lead) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to fall down, to fly) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to wish) 2nd cl.

465. Verbs that are conjugated in the Atmanepada only.

[illegible] (to hear) 6th class; [illegible] to talk (to ati evil being) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to fight) 9th cl.; [illegible] (to know) 4th class; [illegible] (to think) 4th class. (Exceptions:—[illegible]). [illegible] (to invoke, to adore) 1st cl.; [illegible] (to express the Hom juice) 5th class.

---

* Similarly, [illegible]

466. Verbs that are conjugated both in the Parasmaipada and the Atmanepada.

ಕೃ (to carry) 1st cl.; ಆಸ್ (to sit) 2nd cl.; ಇ (to go) 2nd cl.; ಕೃಷ್ (to go); ಇಚ್ಛ (to wish) 6th cl.; ಕೃಞ್ (to do) 5th cl.; ಅದ್ಭಕ್ಷ (to eat, to drink) 1st. cl.; ಈಶ್ವರ್ (to rule) 1st cl.; ಗೃಹ್ (to hold); ಹನ್ (to smite) 2nd cl.; ಧೃಞ್ (to hold, to support); ಸಿಧ್ಞ್ (to fasten) 1st cl.; ಸು (to give, to create) 5th cl.; ಪ್ರಭೃಞ್ (to rush forth) 1st cl.; ಮೃ (to perish, to be lost) 4th cl.; ರಕ್ಷ (to protect) 2nd cl.; ಇಚ್ಛ್ (to ask) 6th cl.; ಪ್ರಯಚ್ಛ್ (to grant, to bestow) 1st cl.; ಭೂ (to be) 1st cl.; ಹೃಞ್ (to carry) 1st cl.; ಶ್ರುಞ್ (to speak) 2nd cl.; ಲೂ (to grow); ಪ್ರಲೂಞ್ (to grow) 4th cl.; ಬ್ರೂಞ್ (to speak) 3rd cl.; ಸಂಹೃಞ್ (to carry, to hunt) 1st cl.; ಸಿಧ್ಞ್ (to work) 4th cl.; ಸ್ಥಾ (to stand) 1st cl.; ಸ್ನಾ (to bathe, to wash) 4th cl.; ಶೃ (to hear) 5th cl.

Roots that form their special base in two or more ways.

467. Verbal forms having the same root and signification belong, in several instances, to more than one class in the conjugational tenses and moods. *E. g.*

ಕೃಞ್ to do—ಪ್ರಥಮ ಪುರುಷ 5th class, imperat. 2nd sing. Parasmai.; ಮಧ್ಯಮ ಪುರುಷ 2nd cl., imperat. 2nd sing. Atmane. (6th cl.

ವಸ್ to dwell—ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ 2nd cl.; ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ, ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ

ಗುಪ್ to hide, to protect—ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ 1st cl.; ಪುರುಷ 6th cl.

ಆಪ್ to seize, to take hold of, to get—ಪ್ರಥಮ ಪುರುಷ 9th cl.; ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ 6th cl.

ಕೃತ್ ಪ್ರಥಮ to cut, to pare off—ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ ಪ್ರಥಮ 2nd cl.; ಪ್ರಥಮಪುರುಷ 6th cl.

कृ to give, to make, to place—ददामि, ददावः, ददामः 2nd cl.; ददाति, दत्तः, ददति 3rd cl., &c. [2nd cl.

मन्थ् to fashion—मथ्नामि 1st cl.; ददामि, दद्वः, दद्मः

ज्ञा to discern—जानीमः pres. 2nd plu. Parasmai. 1st cl.; जानीयात् pot. 3rd sing. Parasmai., जानीत pot. 3rd sing. Atmane. 9th cl.

जभ् to deceive—जृम्भ 1st cl.; जभ्रिरे (Gâth.) 5th cl.; imperf. 3rd sing. Atmane. Comp. Sans. हन् 1st cl. special base हन; 5th cl., special base हन्.

त्रै to protect—त्रायसे, त्रायेथे 2nd cl.; त्रायन्ते 4th cl.

धृ to remember, to recite—धारयामि 1st cl., धारयन्तः (pres. partic. Parasmai. nom. plu.) 3rd cl.; धारयेत् (pot. 3rd sing. Parasmai.) 2nd cl.

धा to join.—धामि, धेमः (pres. 1st sing. Parasmai.) 1st cl.; धेथे 2nd cl.; धानाः 4th cl.

हन्, हन्, हन् to smite, to kill—हनामि 1st cl.; हनन्ति 8th cl.

हृ, Sans. हृ to strew, to spread—हरन्ति 5th cl.; हरन्ति, हरन्ति 9th cl. [5th cl.

हर्ष to look into—हर्षन्ते 4th cl.; हर्षन्ते

हृ to hear—शृणोमि, शृणोमः 2nd cl.; शृण्वन्ति 5th cl.

आस् to sit—आसते, आसाते 6th cl.; आस्ते 2nd cl., &c.

खन् to dig—खनामि, खनावः 1st cl.; खनन्ति, खनन्ति 2nd cl.

Compare Sans. rt. सू (to join), which belongs both to the second and to the ninth class; rt. भज् (to go) belongs to the first and to the fourth class.

468. The same root, when it has different significations, belongs to different classes.

E. g.

[illegible], जागर् to be awake—3rd cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]; [illegible] to sing, to praise—2nd cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]

[illegible] to choose, to select—9th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]; [illegible] to atone for, to pay the penalty for—3rd cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]

[illegible], Sans. नश् to be extinct or vanished—4th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]—[illegible] to obtain, to find—1st cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]

[illegible] to fight against—9th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]—[illegible] to be fulfilled, to cross—10th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]

[illegible] to carry—1st cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible], &c.—[illegible] to cut, to shave off—9th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible] Wester.

[illegible], [illegible] to find—6th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] &c.—[illegible] to be found, to happen, 7th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible]

[illegible] to hear—5th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible] (pres. partic. Parasmai. instr. sing.—[illegible], Sans. सु, सू to pass, to go—1st cl., *e. g.*, [illegible] pres. partic. gen. sing. Vend. 7, 27.

[illegible] to beget—9th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible]—[illegible] to express the Hom juice, 5th cl.; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible]

469. A few roots are used both transitively as well as intransi-

tively. *E. g.*, [illegible] (trans.) to beget, to bring forth; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible] — [illegible] (intrans.) to be born ([illegible])

[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (trans.) to lead, to urge, to incite; *e. g.*, [illegible] Wester., [illegible] — [illegible], [illegible] (intrans.) to follow; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible] .. [illegible]

Non-Conjugational Tenses and Moods.

470. Having given in the preceding pages the inflected forms of primitive verbs in the four conjugational tenses and moods, we now proceed with the verbal forms of the non-conjugational tenses and moods, which are, as aforesaid, the future, the perfect, the aorist and the precative or benedictive. The rules for the formation of these tenses and moods apply to all primitive roots.

The Future Tense.

The future tense in Avesta is formed in two ways:—

471. (1) The third persons singular, dual and plural both in the Parasmaipada and the Atmanepada are expressed by the nominatives singular, dual and plural of the masculine gender of a noun ending in [illegible] and implying agency (nomen agentis). The nominative of the singular ends in [illegible] Sans. ता, the nominative of the dual in [illegible] Sans. तारौ, and the nominative of the plural in [illegible] Sans. तारस्. *E. g.*, [illegible] he will protect, lit. he is a protector. Similarly, [illegible] they two will protect; [illegible] they (implying more than two) will protect. The same rule equally holds good in Sanskrit; *e. g.*, from rt. नी to lead, we have नेता, he will lead; नेतारौ, they both will lead; नेतारस they (implying more than two) will lead.

In the first and second persons singular, dual and plural [illegible] Sans. ता is compounded with the corresponding persons of the

present of the verb 𐬌𐬀𐬨 Sans. अस् to be. This is called the **Periphrastic Future.*** *E. g.*

𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬨 + 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 = 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 I will protect; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬧 + 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 = 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬧𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 we will protect; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬩 + 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 = 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬩𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 you will protect. Similarly, in Sanskrit नेता + अस्मि = नेतास्मि I will lead; नेता + असि = नेतासि thou wilt lead; नेता + स्मः = नेतास्मः we will lead; नेता + स्थ = नेतास्थ you will lead, &c.—all in the Parasmaipada. These forms are very rare in the Avesta texts. Mark the following sentence:—

𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀-𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬨 it will destroy Acatma, it will destroy Naçu,...it will destroy Pairika, &c. (Vend. 11, 12).

472. (2) The future is in many cases formed by adding 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎 or 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀 Sans. स्य (changeable to 𐬵𐬀𐬰 or 𐬵𐬀𐬰𐬀 Sans. ष्य) to the root, the vowel of which generally becomes guņated, and to the base formed in this manner, the personal terminations of the conjugational tenses and moods are attached. This is called the **Simple Future**. *E. g.*

Note.—In Sanskrit the personal terminations of the present tense only are subjoined to the base; *e. g.*, दास्यामि, दास्यसि, दास्यति (rt. दा to give).

473. Future Present—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬎); 𐬌𐬀𐬰𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬰); 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬎𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬐𐬀𐬥𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀)—all Gâthâ forms, and as is occasionally the case, the personal termination 𐬎𐬀𐬨 is dropped.

In some rare instances, the intermediate 𐬀 or 𐬁 (Sans. इ) is inserted between the root and the characteristic mark of the future;

* Comp. Professor Roufey's Sans. grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 150.

e. g., [Avestan] Wester., [Avestan] Geld. (Y. 28, 1) I shall propitiate (rt. [Avestan]) Comp. Sans. [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible])

3rd Per. Sing.—[Avestan]; [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan]) [Avestan] he shall come (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan] he shall utter (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan] to smite)—all Gāthā forms.

3rd Per. Plu.—[Avestan] (rt. [Avestan])

474. Future Present—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—[Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan].. [Avestan]

2nd Per. Sing.—[Avestan].. [Avestan] (orig., [Avestan] + [Avestan]); [Avestan] Geld. (Y. 28, 8). [Avestan]

3rd Per. Sing.—[Avestan]; [Avestan]; rt.

3rd Per. Plu.—[Avestan] (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan] to squeeze; to pound).

475. Future Present Subjunc.—Parasmai.

3rd Per. Sing.—[Avestan] (rt. [Avestan] to perish).

476. Future Present Subjunc.—Atmane.

1st Per. Sing.—[Avestan] [Avestan] I shall regard Thee (rt. [Avestan]); [Avestan] I shall conciliate (rt. [Avestan])

2nd Per. Sing.—[Avestan] Wester. (rt. [Avestan] to bestow).

477. Future Imperfect—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Plu.—[Avestan] Y. 70, 4 (orig., [Avestan]; rt. [Avestan] to obtain).

3rd Per. Sing.—[Avestan].. [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan] to see); [Avestan] (rt. [illegible] to lead); [Avestan] (rt. [Avestan] to smite).

Note.—The imperfect of the future is otherwise called the **Conditional Tense.** In Sanskrit the augment अ is also prefixed before रुध (changeable to रुन्ध) being added to the root; *e. g.*, अरौत्सम् (rt. रुध् to give).

478. Future Imperfect Subjunc.—Parasmai.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible])

479. Future Imperative—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 61, 5; [illegible] Wester., [illegible] Geld. Y. 44, 18 (rt. [illegible] to destroy).

480. Future Imperative—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Wester., [illegible] Geld. (Y. 50, 4) I shall hear (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] I shall seize (rt. [illegible]).

481. In several instances, the present and the imperfect subjunctive, as well as the 1st and the 3rd per. of the imperative are used in the sense of the future; *e. g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible] (2nd cl.), [illegible]; [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] he will benefit, [illegible] he will destroy.

The Perfect.

482. The perfect, otherwise called the second preterite, has two forms, viz., a reduplicated one and a periphrastic one.

The Reduplicated Perfect.

The reduplicated perfect is formed by suffixing the following personal terminations to the reduplicated base. The reduplication of the base is effected according to the rules given at p. 168 *et seq.*

483. "**Strong and weak forms.**—The base of the reduplicated perfect has often two forms, a strong base and a weak base. The strong base is used in the strong forms, the weak base in the weak forms. The strong forms are the three persons of the singular in the Parasmaipada; the remaining forms of the Parasmaipada and all the forms of the Atmanepada are weak*." In the strong base the radical vowel is changed to its guṇa equivalent, rarely, to its vriddhi form. Comp. Sans. Rt. विद् to split; strong base विवेद्; weak base विविद्; *e.g.*, विवेद 1st per. sing. Parasmai. विविदे 1st per. sing. Atmane.

484. Personal Terminations of the Perfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	-अ		-म
2	†-थ		-अ
3	-अ	-तम्	-तुः, -रे, -रे; -उः (seldom)

485. Personal Terminations of the Perfect Tense—Atmanepada.

	Singular.	*Dual.*	*Plural.*
1	-इ		
2	-षे, -से		
3	-ए	-आते	-रे

The following are some notable instances of the reduplicated perfect as met with in the Avestaic writings:—

486. Perfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

1st. Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]

* *Vide* Dr. Kuthorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Edition, p. 118.

† Sometimes, though rarely, -थ (see [illegible] p. 239).

(orig., ; rt. to see); (rt. to grow); (rt. ; orig.,); (orig., —the final vowel is shortened; rt.)

1st Per. Plu.— Wester., Geld. (rt.); (rt.); (rt.); (rt. to exert).

2nd Per. Sing.— , (rt.); (orig., —the reduplicative syllable is dropped; rt. to know).

2nd Per. Plu.— (Y. 8, 2) You have deserved (it); rt. .—Mark the lengthening of the radical vowel.

3rd Per. Sing.— , (rt.); Wester., Geld. (rt.); (rt. , Sans. to love); (rt.); (rt. , Ved. to be able); (rt.); (rt.); , (rt.); (orig., , rt.), , ; (rt.); (rt.). Mark (Visp. 16, 3) and (Ys. 13, 29).—The reduplicative syllable is dropped from these two forms. Comp. Sans. perf. 3rd sing. Parasmai. (rt. to know).

3rd Per. Dual.— (rt.); (rt.)

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Y. 43, 15; rt. [illegible])—the reduplicative syllable is dropped.

487. Perfect Tense—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible], [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible]...[illegible] (rt. [illegible])

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (orig., [illegible]; rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible] Vend. 5, 6 (rt. [illegible]); [illegible], (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to fight, to oppose); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to work).

3rd Per. Dual.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Wester. (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Geld. (rt. [illegible]).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to sit); [illegible] Yt. 13, 64 (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (for [illegible]) Yt. 10, 40 (rt. [illegible])—the reduplicative syllable is dropped from the last two forms. Mark [illegible] Yt. 10, 80; rt. [illegible] to lie (as on the ground). In this verbal form, the reduplicative syllable and the initial vowel of the personal termination are dropped.

Observation.—Rt. [illegible] (Sans. [illegible] to go, to move) forms its 3rd Per. Plu. Paraamsi. [illegible]—the reduplicative syllable is dropped (see Y. 50, 10). Comp. the Sans. personal termination [illegible] (as in [illegible]).

488. The Periphrastic Perfect.

The periphrastic perfect is formed by compounding the perfect of the auxiliary verb 𐬌𐬀𐬨 'to be' with the present participle (either Parasmai. or Atmane.) of any verb. Its forms are very rare. *E. g.*

𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨,

𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨

The Aorist.

489. The Aorist, otherwise called the third preterite, has four forms in Avesta. Of whatever form it may be, it always takes the terminations of the imperfect only. Sometimes, though rarely, the augment 𐬀 is prefixed to the root; *e. g.*, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨. The aorist forms are more frequently and freely used in the Gâthâ dialect than in the Avestaic writings. In Sanskrit there are seven varieties of the Aorist; the common characteristic of them all is the augment अ. Four of these varieties correspond to the Avestaic forms.

490. The first form of the Aorist is constituted by suffixing the personal terminations of the imperfect directly to the root, the vowel of which is sometimes strengthened. This is called the Root-Aorist. *E. g.*

491. Root-Aorist—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨, 𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬵𐬌)

1st Per. Plu.—𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬌, 𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨

2nd Per. Sing.—𐬵𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (orig., 𐬵𐬨+𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨, rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬨); 𐬵𐬌𐬌 (orig., 𐬵+𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨; rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨); 𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬵𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨, 𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬵𐬨𐬀); 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨); 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬨 to strengthen); 𐬵𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬨 to dwell); 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬨 (rt. 𐬵𐬨𐬀 to fashion).

3rd Per. Dual.—𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬀𐬎 Y. 30, 3 (rt. 𐬀𐬌)

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬀𐬎 Y. 49, 3. [give).

Compare Sans. अदात्, अदात, अदात, अदात, अदात, &c. (rt., दा to

492. Root-Aorist—Atmanepada.

1st. Per. Sing.—𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬌)

1st Per. Plu.—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬌 to choose).

2nd Per Sing.—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 Geld. (rt. 𐬵𐬎); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬎 to give).

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌 (rt. 𐬎𐬀𐬎); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (Geld. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬌); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬵); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬎

493. In the second form of the Aorist the personal terminations are subjoined to a base formed from the root by the addition of 𐬀. This is called the 𐬀-Aorist. *E. g.*

494. 𐬀-Aorist—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬀𐬌 (originally, 𐬎+𐬀+𐬌; rt. 𐬌 to be); *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬌 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (see Vend. 18, 29)—a sort of a compound or periphrastic aorist. 𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 (rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬵 𐬎 to seize).

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬌; 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬎 (orig., 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎; rt. 𐬵𐬀 to do). Professor Justi takes it as an abridged form of Sans. अचकन—a reduplicated aorist.

3rd Per. Plu.—𐬌 (orig., 𐬌+𐬀+𐬌); *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 𐬌 (Vend. 19, 23. 25)—a sort of compound or periphrastic aorist.

Compare Sans. असिचम्, असिचस्, असिचत, असिचाम, असिचत, असिचन् (rt. सिच् to pour).

495. The base of the third kind of the Aorist is formed by adding स or सस (convertible to ष or षष) to the root, the vowel of which is occasionally guṇated. This is called the स-Aorist, corresponding to the Sibilant-Aorist in Sanskrit. *E. g.*

496. स-Aorist—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀘𑀺𑀢𑀺 Geld. Y. 48, 2 (rt. 𑀘𑀺𑀢 to smite); 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀢𑀺 (rt. 𑀲𑀺𑀲); 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀯𑀳𑀺 (rt. 𑀯𑀳 to lead).—Mark the change of स to ष after ष, according to para. 45.

3rd Per. Plu.—𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀘𑀺𑀘𑀺𑀭𑀺 Geld., 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀭𑀺 Wester. (rt. 𑀘𑀺𑀢)

Compare Sans. अचैषम् अशैषम् (rt. शी to lead).—Mark the change of श to ष being preceded by ै.

497. स-Aorist—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Sing.—𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀘𑀺𑀲𑀺 Geld., 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺 Wester. (rt. 𑀘𑀺𑀦 to think); 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀸...𑀲𑀸 (rt. 𑀲𑀸 to give).

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀘𑀺𑀢 (orig., 𑀧𑀸 + स + 𑀘𑀺𑀦; rt. 𑀘𑀺𑀦 to think).—Observe the variation of स to त after 𑀘.

498. In the fourth form of the Aorist, the root is reduplicated* before the personal terminations of the imperfect are added. In several cases the union-vowel 𑀅 is inserted before the termination. The radical vowel is guṇated in the strong forms, *i.e.*, the three persons of the singular in the Parasmaipada. *E. g.*

499. Reduplicated Aorist—Parasmaipada.

2nd Per. Sing.—𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺 (rt. 𑀲𑀺𑀲)

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺 (rt. 𑀲𑀺𑀲); 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺 (rt. 𑀲𑀺𑀲); 𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺𑀲𑀺 (rt. 𑀲𑀺𑀲).—Mark the guṇating of the vowel of the reduplicative syllable in the last word.

* For the rules of reduplication, see pp. 165-173.

Comp. Sans. अजीजनम्, अजीजनस्, अजीजनत्, अजीजनाम, अजीजनत, अजीजनन् (rt. जन् to give birth to).

The Precative or Benedictive.

500. The precative is formed by adding the following personal terminations directly to the root. Sanskrit strictly follows the rule.

Terminations of the Benedictive—Parasmaipada.

	Singular.	*Plural.*
1	𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯	𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯
2	𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬰	𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯
3	𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯	𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬰

The following are some notable examples of this verb:—

501. Benedictive—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—Mark 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 Geld. Y. 43, 8 (rt. 𐬎𐬀 to give): *e.g.*, 𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌 I would devote myself to Thee, O Mazda! (Rev. Dr. Mills).

1st Per. Plu.—𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨 (rt. 𐬎𐬀); 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎𐬀 Wester., 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎𐬀 Geld. Y. 60, 12; 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎𐬀; 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 Wester. Y. 28, 6 (rt. 𐬀𐬨 to hear).

2nd Per. Sing.—*𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬰, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬰; 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎𐬀-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 (for 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎𐬀-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀) see Yt. 10, 98, 135. 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎𐬀

2nd Per. Plu.—𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬎

3rd Per. Sing.—𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯; 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬎𐬀-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀, 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬯𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 Geld. (orig.

---

* Mark 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬨-𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀, &c. Geld. Y. 42, 2.

[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] Y. 60, 5 (for [illegible], rt. [illegible] to smite); [illegible] Y. 60, 7 (for [illegible]; rt. [illegible], [illegible] to leave).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 55, 2; [illegible]—Mark ...[illegible] [illegible] may (the Bountiful Immortals) accept and help on (Rev. Dr. Mills) Geld. Y. 28, 0. (orig., [illegible] [illegible]— [illegible] and [illegible] ([illegible]) being transposed).

Compare Sans. भूयासम्, भूयास्, भूयात्, &c. (rt. भू to be).

Note.—The Atmanepada forms (except in the 3rd per. plu.) are not met with; *e. g.*, [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible])

Derivative Verbs.

502. The derivative verbs are, as already mentioned at p. 161, the frequentative or intensive, the desiderative, the denominative and the causal. All of them are inflected in the four conjugational classes in the Parasmaipada and the Atmanepada. Moreover, any root of the ten classes may take the form of a derivative verb. The special base of each of them is formed according to the following rules.

Frequentative or Intensive Verbs.

503. The frequentative or intensive is generally used in order to signify the repetition or intensity of the action or condition denoted by the verb, from which it is derived.* There are three forms of the frequentative; in other words, the base of this derivative verb is formed in three ways. The first form is constituted by reduplication,† the second by reduplication and the suffix [illegible], and the third by reduplication and the suffix [illegible]. *E. g.*

Note.—In Sanskrit there are two kinds of frequentatives; the

* Comp. Prof. Benfey's Sanskrit Grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 25.

† For the rules of reduplication, see pp. 165-173.

one is formed by reduplication, the other by reduplication and the suffix य; e. g., (1) जंगम्, (2) जंगम्य (rt. गम् to go).

504. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] (Y. 32, 15) I will certainly destroy (rt. [illegible])

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] Y. 38, 4 (rt. [illegible] to offer).

Note.—In this instance the vowel of the reduplicative syllable, and not the radical vowel, is gunated. Comp. Sans. Parasmaipada Frequentative Base नेनी (rt. नी to lead), दोधू (rt. धू to agitate).

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Geld. (rt. [illegible] to wound); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to beget); [illegible] (rt. [illegible])

Subjunc. 3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to fill, to promote).

505. Present Subjunctive—Atmanepada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Geld. (orig., [illegible]; rt. [illegible])

506. Imperfect Tense—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to drive away); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to smite); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to bewail).

Subjunc. 3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible], Sans. धूर्व to injure, to do harm).

Subjunc. 3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible] to wound).

507. Imperative Mood—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] he will protect (rt. [illegible]; reduplic. [illegible]; [illegible])

508. Potential Mood—Parasmaipada.

1st Per. Sing.—[illegible] Yt. 8, 11 (rt. [illegible] to go); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] Y. 8, 24 (rt. [illegible])

2nd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Y. 9, 26 (rt. [illegible], Ved. [illegible] to be able, to have power).

3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] Vend. 18, 39 (rt. [illegible] to tear); [illegible] Yt. 13, 13 (rt. [illegible] to smite).

509. Potential Mood—Atmanepada.

1st Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible]) Y. 38, 5.

Desiderative Verbs.

510. The desiderative verb indicates, that the agent wishes or is about to perform the action or to undergo the state expressed by the root or the derivative base.*

The base is formed by the reduplication of the root (according to the rules laid down at pp. 168-173) and by adding the syllable [illegible] Sans. [illegible] (convertible to [illegible] Sans. [illegible]). Sanskrit strictly follows the same rule; *e. g.*: [illegible] to wish to be (rt. [illegible] to be). In some instances, however, the intermediate [illegible] is inserted before [illegible]: *e. g.*, [illegible] to wish to know (from [illegible] to know).

511. Present Tense—Parasmaipada.

3rd Per. Plu.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible], Sans. [illegible] to live).

512. Present Tense—Atmanepada.

2nd Per. Plu.—[illegible] Geld. (Y. 48, 7) you desire to hold fast (rt. [illegible]).

Subjunc. 3rd Per. Sing.—[illegible] (rt. [illegible], Ved. [illegible] to be brisk, to look about for); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to empty); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to kill).

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 186.

Imperfect Tense—Atmanepada.

3rd Per. Sing.—अपस्पृधेथाम् (rt. स्पृध् to see).

513. Imperative Mood—Atmanepada.

2nd Per. Sing.—अधीष्व (rt. इध् Ved. धिन्व).

Denominatives or Nominal Verbs.

514. "Verbs are formed from nominal bases by adding to them the characteristic marks of the tenses and moods and the personal terminations, or more commonly, by deriving, with the help of some suffix, a verbal base from the nominal base, and by adding the characteristic marks of the tenses and moods and the personal terminations to the derivative verbal base formed in this manner. Thus from the nominal base सभा (an assembly) is formed सभायति (he calls for people to assemble); from the nominal base अश्वमेध (harm) is formed अश्वमेधति (he or she does harm), &c. Verbs thus derived from nominal bases are called **denominatives** or **nominal verbs**; they generally convey the notion that a person or thing behaves or is like or treats a person or thing like that which is expressed by the nominal base."* There are three classes of denominative verbs.

515. The first class comprises those which are formed from nominal bases without any special derivative suffix, by simply adding the personal terminations to the nominal base; *e. g.*, मूर्धन्यन्ति they patronise or protect (from मूर्धन् the head); अभ्यमित्रायते he fights against (from अमित्रायते fight); कण्डूयेत, दुःखायेत subjunc. (from कण्डूयति).

Note.—The denominative may also take a causal form, in which case it rejects the final अ; *e. g.*, अश्वमेधयति-ते, अश्वमेधयति-अश्वमेधयते Vend. 5, 33. 34.

---

* Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 206.

𐬞𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬯𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 he will parch (our meadows) with draught subjunc. (from 𐬞𐬀𐬭𐬌𐬯𐬀 draught: orig., 𐬞𐬀𐬭𐬌 + 𐬯𐬀𐬙, see para. 58).

𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (Geld.) I shall hear (from 𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 obedience). The same form may be taken in the fut. imperat.

516. The second class of denominatives consists of those forms which add the suffix 𐬵 to the crude base of a noun, the final vowel of which is gunated; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀), 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 Wester. (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌 birth; rt. 𐬐𐬌 to beget).

517. The denominatives of the third class subjoin 𐬵𐬀 to the nominal base, the final vowel of which is occasionally dropped; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 indebtedness, guilt); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 नमस् veneration, adoration); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 asking); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 a lord, a master); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 health); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 he calls for people to assemble (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 an assembly); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 nourishment); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 a chariot); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 (causal. from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀 fat); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬙 Y. 53, 7 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬥𐬀) ye bring forth (Mills); imperat. 2nd plu. Parasmai.

518. In Sanskrit denominatives are divided into five classes, two of which strictly follow the rules of the Avesta language; *e. g.*, कृष्णति he acts like Krishna (from कृष्ण); तपस्यति he undergoes penances (from तपस्). The remaining three classes subjoin य or आय, य or अस्य, and काम्य (from काम to desire) respectively to the crude bases of nouns; *e. g.*, सत्यापयामि I tell the truth (from सत्य);

क्षीरस्यति I desire milk (from क्षीर); पुत्रकाम्यति he desires a son (from पुत्र), &c.

Causal Verbs.

519. A causal form, inflected in the four conjugational tenses and moods of the three voices, may be derived from any root of the ten classes. "It conveys the notion that a person or thing causes or makes or orders another person or thing to perform the action or to undergo the state denoted by the root."* It is employed not only to give a causal sense to a verb, but also an active meaning to a neuter verb. All verbs, primitive as well as derivative, admit of this modification.

520. The causal is formed by adding ـــــــ to the root, the vowel of which undergoes the same changes as a verb of the tenth class, *vide* p. 166; *e.g.*, ـــــــ to make known (from the primitive verb ـــــــ to know); ـــــــ to cause to sit down (from the primitive verb ـــــــ to sit down); ـــــــ (from the derivative verb ـــــــ, rt. ـــــــ Sans. सद् to hasten, to cross).

521. "The conjugation of the Causal agrees almost entirely with the conjugation of the roots of the tenth class; it differs from it mainly in this, that causal forms are derivative both in form and in meaning, and that they may be formed of all roots. The causal of roots of the tenth class generally does not differ from the simple verb."† *E.g.*, ـــــــ Vand. 10, 27 (intransitive); ـــــــ Yt. 17, 54 (transitive or causal).

522. Sometimes, though rarely, the causal changes its radical vowel to its vriddhi form and substitutes ـــــــ, ـــــــ or ـــــــ (Sans. पव, नव) for ـــــــ (Sans. अव); *e.g.*, ـــــــ

* Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 173.
† Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit Grammar, 3rd Ed., pp. 173-172.

(rt. to wash) Vend. 9, 15; (Geld.) he pushes forward (rt. to go forward) Yt. 8, 33. (Comp. Yt. 10, 36); he wakes up (rt. to be awake). Vend. 18, 23. Sanskrit strictly follows the same rule; *e.g.*, दापय (rt. दा to give); आपय, आपय (rt. आ, पै to cook); लापय (rt. ली to dissolve).

Note.—In some instances Sanskrit substitutes नय, नाय, पय or आय for अय; *e.g.*, धूनय (rt. धू to shake); कीर्णय (rt. की to love); कीर्णय, कापय (rt. की to fear); दानय (rt. दा to move).

523. In some rare instances, the causal is formed by changing or lengthening the radical vowel* without subjoining the characteristic *e.g.*, how ye (Y. 31, 15); rt. to fall; caus. to cause to fall, to fall; + = imperat. 2nd plu. Atmanes.; (Dr. Spiegel) Y. 12, 1, I cause (the Daêvas) to perish (rt. नश् नश् to perish); from rt. to die killing; *e.g.*, see Vend. 2, 22; from rt. to hear, (caus. past partic.) well-proclaimed (lit.), of high renown; *e.g.*, ... see Vend. 2, 21.

(Sans. to go) forms its causal base from viz., ; *e.g.*, —Dr. Klelhorn.

Inchoative Verbs.

524. The base of an Inchoative verb, inflected in the four conjugational tenses and moods, is formed by adding (sometimes,) directly to the root. It conveys the notion that a person or thing begins to perform the action or undergo the state

* Mark the same change in the English verb *to fell*, lit. to cause *to fall*

expressed by the root; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬨 to be heated; 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨 (inchoative base) to grow warm, to grow a little hot; see 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨, 𐬵𐬀𐬨 𐬵𐬀𐬨. Similarly, 𐬵𐬌 to go; incho. base 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌; see 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬵𐬌, &c; 𐬵𐬌𐬌 to decrease, to wane; incho. base 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌; see 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬌; 𐬵𐬌 to wish; incho. base 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌; see 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌; 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌 (Y. 31, 4) pres. 1st sing. for 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌; 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬌 pres. partic. mas. nom. sing.

Passive Voice.

Conjugational Tenses and Moods in the Passive Voice.

525. Every root in every one of the ten classes may take a passive form, which is conjugated as an Atmanepada verb of the fourth class; in other words, the passive base is formed by adding 𐬵𐬀 to the root, and by conjugating this base in the Atmanepada according to the analogy of the Atmanepada of the fourth conjugational class. Final 𐬌𐬌 is gunated; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬌𐬌). Final 𐬵𐬀 is sometimes shortened; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬀, Sans. नि-धा to lay down).

Note.—The same rule holds good in Sanskrit; *e. g.*, दृश्य to be seen (pass. verbal base from दृश् to see); with terminations, दृश्ये I am seen; दृश्यसे, दृश्यते, अदृश्यत, दृश्यताम्, &c.

A few notable instances of these verbs in different tenses as found in the Avestaic writings are given below:—

526. Present Tense—Passive.

1st Per. Sing.—𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 Y. 33, 7, I am heard (rt. 𐬵𐬀)

3rd Per. Sing.—*𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬌𐬌); 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀,

---

* Mark the change of 𐬌𐬌 to 𐬵𐬀. Comp. Sans. क्रियते; rt. कृ to do.

𑀅𑀧𑀺𑀵𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑁄 ; 𑀅𑀧𑀺𑀵𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬𑀸 (rt. 𑀇𑀵𑀬-𑀆 to conceal) ; 𑀅𑀧𑀺𑀵𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑁄, 𑀅𑀧𑀺𑀵𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑁄...𑀫𑁆 (rt. 𑀇𑀵-𑀬).

3rd Per. Plu.—*𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀘𑁆𑀘𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺 (rt. 𑀏𑀘𑁆𑀘); 𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀘𑁆𑀘𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬𑁄, 𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀘𑁆𑀘𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬𑁄𑀢𑁆, 𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀘𑁆𑀘𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬-𑀫𑁆

527. Present Subjunctive—Passive.

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬 Y. 11, 6 (rt. 𑀲𑀺). Mark the lengthening of the radical vowel and the dropping of 𑀬.

3rd Per. Plu.—𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺, 𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬𑁄, 𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬𑁄𑀢𑁆, 𑀅𑀧𑁂𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀦𑁆𑀢𑀺𑀬-𑀫𑁆

528 Imperfect Tense—Passive

2nd Per. Sing.—𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀣-𑀫𑁆 (rt. 𑀲𑀺-𑀫𑁆)

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬 (rt. 𑀲𑀺); 𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀣𑀸 (Yt. 13, 91) it was heard round about; 𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀺𑀬𑀣𑀸 (for 𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀣𑀸) it would be accepted (Darmes.).

3rd Per. Dual.—𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬𑀢𑀸𑀫𑁆 Y. 9, 10 (rt. 𑀲𑀺-𑀫𑁆)

529. Imperative Mood—Passive.

3rd Per. Sing.—𑀓𑁂𑀫𑀯𑀢𑁆𑀢𑁂 𑀳𑁂𑀢𑀺𑀲𑀫𑁆𑀧𑀸 (Y. 48, 7) let the Wrath-demon of rapine be cast down (Mills); (rt. 𑀳𑀦𑁆-𑀆)

530. Potential Mood—Passive.

3rd Per. Sing.—*𑀅𑀧𑀓𑀻𑀭𑁂𑀬𑁆𑀬 Vend. 16, 2 (dry dust), should be strewn (rt. 𑀓𑀻𑀭-𑀬 कॄ-पर).

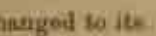
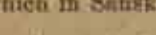
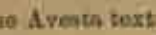
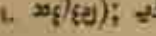
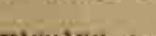
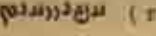
Observation.—Rt. 𑀲𑀺 (सन् to beget) rejects its final nasal in all forms except in 𑀅𑀧𑀸𑀲𑀻𑀬 in which 𑀬 is dropped.

---

* Mark the change of 𑀏 to 𑀅. Comp. Sans. किरते; rt. कॄ to do.

Non-conjugational Tenses and Moods in the Passive Voice.

The Aorist.

531. The 3rd Per. Sing. of the Aorist Passive is formed by adding  (Sans. त) to any root, the vowel of which is optionally changed to its guṇa or vṛiddhi equivalent; the augment  , which in Sanskrit is always prefixed to the root, is rarely seen in the Avesta texts: *e. g.*  (rt. );  (rt. );  (Y. 32, 14) it has been said (rt. );  (rt.  to inform, to know);  (rt. );  (rt. )—Mark  Y. 51, 15, it would be given (from  rt. )—Professor Justi.

Comp. Sans. अनिन्दि (rt. निन्द् to censure); असेवि (rt. सेव् to serve, to honour); अतोदि (rt. तुद् to strike); अलावि (rt. लू, to cut), &c.

532. The forms of the remaining persons of the Aorist Passive are very rare. They do not as in Sanskrit differ from the same forms of the Atmanepada. *E. g.*

2nd Per. Plu.—  lit., you were heard; you became famous. Mark the augment —a rare characteristic, though common in Sanskrit. Comp. Sans. अबोधिषि (sibilant aorist) I knew (Atmane.); I was known (Passive); rt. बुध् to know.

The Reduplicated Perfect—Passive.

533. The Reduplicated Perfect of the Passive in Avesta as well as in Sanskrit, is formed from the same roots and in the same manner as the Reduplicated Perfect of the Atmanepada. *E. g.*

1st Per. Sing.—  (rt. );  I have been known (rt. )

3rd Per. Sing.—  it has been spoken (rt. );

(Y. 29, 4) it has been fulfilled (rt.). Comp. Sans. हनिष्ये (rt. हन् to strike); निनिन्दे (rt. निन्द् to censure), &c.

The Simple Future—Passive.

534. The formation of the Simple Future of the Passive, both in Sanskrit and Avesta, does not differ from the formation of the same forms of the Atmanepada. *E. g.*

3rd Per. Sing.—(Y. 29, 4) it shall be fulfilled (rt.); (Y. 19, 10) it shall be spoken (rt.). Comp. Sans. वेदिष्ये I shall know (Atmane.); I shall be known (Passive).

Compound Verbs.

535. Compound verbs are formed—

(1) By affixing or to roots. These optionally insert or before the personal terminations, and are generally inflected in the four conjugational tenses and moods; *e. g.*, (from to cleanse, to purify); (from to harden); caus. (from to be lulled to sleep); (from to stamp on the ground); (from to have mercy); imperat. 2 plu. Atmane. (=+*+; from to heed, to direct the mind to).

Mark Geld. (Y. 45, 1) imperat. 2 plu. Atmane. (ponder ye, heed ye).

(2) By compounding a noun or an adjective, or both, to a verbal form; *e. g.*, Geld. (Y. 53, 3) act with

---

* is euphonically inserted without affecting the meaning.

good sense (orig., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 = 𐬨𐬀𐬎 + 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 + 𐬨𐬀𐬎 imperat. 2 sing. Atmane.; act thou).

The following are some examples of compounds with verbs given by Dr. Karl F. Geldner in his newly published Avesta Texts:—

𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 mayst thou have thy perfume justly! 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 may I obtain! (𐬌𐬀𐬎 𐬀𐬭𐬫 to obtain); 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 have mercy on me; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 tell me; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 worship me; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 grant me; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 mayst thou hear our Yaçna! 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 be thou propitiated with our Yaçna! 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 come to me; 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 I will come unto thee (for help and joy).

Participles.—Formation of their bases.

☞ It should be noted that the declension of the crude forms of participles follows the analogy of that of nominal bases.

Present Participle—Parasmaipada.

536. The participle of the present Parasmaipada is formed by the addition of the suffix 𐬌𐬀𐬎 to the unchangeable special base of the present Parasmaipada; when the special base is changeable, 𐬌𐬀𐬎 is added to the special weak base. *E. g.*

Rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬎 (to carry) 1st cl.; unchangeable special base 𐬌𐬀𐬎, pres. partic. 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎. Mark 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (in 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 Y. 58, 1) pres. partic. nom. and acc. neut.; rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬎 (to follow) 1st cl.

Rt. 𐬌𐬀𐬎 (to lie down) 2nd cl.; special weak base 𐬌𐬀𐬎; pres. partic. 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 (see 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎 nom. sing. mas. Y. 32, 16).

Rt. [illegible] (ञ) (to remember) 3rd cl.; special weak base, [illegible]; partic. [illegible]; similarly, [illegible]; rt. [illegible] to stand; see [illegible] nom. sing. mas. (Yt. 1, 17).

Rt. [illegible] (to beseech) 4th cl.; unchangeable special base, [illegible]; partic. [illegible] (see [illegible] Yt. 5, 53).

Rt. [illegible] (to select) 5th cl.; special weak base, [illegible]; partic. [illegible]; similarly, [illegible] (rt. [illegible]).

Rt. [illegible] (to ask) 6th cl.; unchangeable special base, [illegible]; partic. [illegible] (see [illegible] Y. 51, 5).

Rt. [illegible] (to find) 7th cl.; special weak base, [illegible]; partic. [illegible]

Comp. Sans. participles यजत (rt. यज् 1st cl.); लिम्पत (rt. लिप् 6th cl.); तुदत (rt. तुद् 6th cl.); सुन्वत (rt. सु 5th cl.), &c.

Derivative Forms of the Same.

537. Intensive: —[illegible] mas. nom. plu. (rt. [illegible] to wound), [illegible] (Geld.) mas. acc. sing. (rt. [illegible] to pass over); [illegible] mas. acc. sing. (rt. [illegible] to watch).

538. Desiderative:—[illegible] mas. nom. sing. (from [illegible]; rt. [illegible] to satisfy).

539. Denominative:—[illegible] see Yt. 5, 110 (in [illegible]; [illegible] flashing, sharp); [illegible] fem. gen. sing. (from [illegible] elect).

540. Causal:—[illegible] abl. plu. (rt. [illegible]).

---

* See [illegible] (pres. 3 sing. Parasmai., rt. [illegible]) Vend. 7, 78.

[illegible] fem. acc. sing. (rt. [illegible]);
[illegible] super. adj. acc. sing. (rt. [illegible]), [illegible] (rt. [illegible]), [illegible] (rt. [illegible]) mas. nom. sing., [illegible] mas. acc. sing. (rt. [illegible]);
[illegible] neu. acc. sing. (rt. [illegible] to learn).

Note.—The present participle of the Parasmaipada is declined after [illegible], see p. 94 et seq. The fem. base of this participle is mostly formed by suffixing ई to the weak base; e.g., [illegible], fem. base [illegible]; it is declined like [illegible]; sometimes, though rarely, the fem. ई is suffixed to the strong base; e.g., [illegible] (from [illegible] strong base).

Present Participle—Atmanepada.

641. The participle of the present Atmanepada is formed by the addition of the suffix [illegible], Sans. [illegible] (changeable to [illegible]), to the unchangeable special base of the present Parasmai.; but when the special base is changeable, [illegible] (Sans. [illegible]) is added to the special weak base. In some rare instances, [illegible] or [illegible] is substituted for [illegible].

Note.—The suffix [illegible] changes its preceding [illegible] mostly to [illegible], sometimes to [illegible]; the medial [illegible] before [illegible] is, in some cases, also changed to [illegible].

Rt. [illegible] (to follow) 1st cl.; unchangeable special base, [illegible]; partic. [illegible].—Mark [illegible] V. 32, 8; rt. [illegible] (to eat) 1st cl.

Rt. [illegible] (to praise) 2nd cl.; special-weak base, [illegible]; partic.

आसायमान; (also, आसायान see V. 10, 6); Mark आसीन Frag. IX, 1; also आसीनक Yt. 21, 4. आसिष्वाण V. 71, 16 (rt. सि 2nd cl.); आसायमान (Vend. 3, 25), आसायान (Vs. 14, 31); rt. सद (to lie down) 1st cl.

Rt. सु 3rd cl.; special weak base, सुन्व; partic. आसुन्वान; आसुषाण (for आसु—); rt. षुञ् (to propitiate) 3rd cl.

Mark आतिष्ठमान; rt. स्था (to stand) 3rd cl. When the special weak base of verbs of the third class ends in स, आ is, in most cases, substituted for आस.

Rt. इषुध् (to seek for, to beseech) 4th cl.; unchangeable special base, आदिषुध्य; partic. आदिषुध्यान; आदिधान (orig. आदिधयान); rt. धी (to think) 4th cl.

Rt. षु (to express the Hom juice) 5th cl.; special weak base, षिष्व; partic. आसिषान see Visp. 2, 3.

Rt. अर्च (to ask) 6th cl.; unchangeable special base, आनर्च; partic. आनर्चान.

Exception :—आसर्चान (rt. सर्च 6th cl.).

Rt. वन्द (to praise) 9th cl.; unchangeable special base, आवन्द; partic. आवन्दान.—Comp. Sans. participles वनवान (rt. वन 1st cl.); दीधयान (rt. धिष् 4th cl.); सुन्वान (rt. षु 5th cl.), &c.

Derivative Forms of the Same:—

542. **Intensive:**—आदिदेवधान (Geld.) nom. plu. (rt. आदेव).

543. **Desiderative:**—दिदिक्षमाण (Geld.) दिदिक्षमाण (Wester.) mas. nom. sing. (rt. दिश); सिषेवयिषमाणा (Wester.) सिषेवयिषमाणा (Geld.) fem. nom. plu. (rt. आसेव) Yt. 13, 49. 73.

544. **Denominative** :—[illegible] gen. sing. (from [illegible]); [illegible] mas. nom. sing. (from [illegible]); [illegible] Wester., [illegible] Geld. (Y. 13, 24) mas. nom. plu. (from [illegible], orig., [illegible]).

545. **Causal**:—[illegible] gen. sing. (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] gen. sing. (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] nom. plu. (rt. [illegible]). [illegible] acc. plu. (rt. [illegible]).

Note.—The present participle of the Atmanepada is declined after [illegible] (p. 65) if the participle be masculine, and [illegible] (p. 71), if the same be neuter. The feminine base is formed by lengthening the final [illegible]; *e. g.*, [illegible], fem. base [illegible]; it is declined like [illegible] (p. 72).

Present Participle—Passive.

546. The participle of the present passive, in Avesta and Sanskrit, is formed by the addition of the suffix [illegible], Sans. मान (convertible to माण) to the passive base in [illegible], Sans. य; in some instances, [illegible] changes its preceding [illegible] to [illegible]; *e. g.*, [illegible] (orig., [illegible]) who or what is besought for; [illegible] who is awakened. Mark [illegible] (rt. [illegible], [illegible] दभ्) who is not deceived. Comp. Sans. हन्यमान (rt. हन् to strike); श्रूयमाण (rt. श्रु to hear), &c. The feminine base is formed by lengthening the final vowel; *e. g.*, [illegible], fem. base [illegible].

Future Participle—Parasmaipada and Atmanepada.

547. The participle of the simple future in the Parasmaipada is formed by suffixing [illegible] (changeable to [illegible]),

and in the Atmanepada by ಅನೀಯರ (changeable to -ಅನೀಯ ಅನ್) to the root, the vowel of which is sometimes guṇated; in other words, the participles of the simple future in the Parasmaipada and the Atmanepada are formed by suffixing ಪ್ಯ and ಅನ್ respectively to the base of the simple future in ಅನೀಯರ (changeable to ಅನೀಯ). E. g. ಪ್ಯಅನೀಯರಾಹುತಿಅನೀಯರ (rt. ಹು to express the Hom juice); ಪ್ಯಅನೀಯರಕಿಅನೀಯರ who or what will be (rt. ಕೃ); ಅನೀಯರಹವಿಷ್ಯಅನೀಯರ what will be offered (lit. offerweacing); rt. ಹವಿಷ್; ಅನೀಯರಜನಿಷ್ಯಮಾಣ who is to be born (rt. ಜನ್); ಅನೀಯರಕರಿಷ್ಯಮಾಣ what will be done (orig. ಅನೀಯರಕೃ+ಷ್ಯಮಾಣ; rt. ಕೃ), &c.

Perfect Participle—Parasmaipada.

548. The perfect participle Parasmaipada, otherwise called the participle of the reduplicated perfect, or of the second preterite, is formed from the corresponding third person plural, which rejects the termination and subjoins the suffix ಉಷ್ (Sans. ವತ್); in other words, it is formed with the suffix ಉಷ್, which is added to the weak base of the reduplicated perfect; e. g., ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರವಿದ್ಉಷ್ who knew (from ವಿದ್ಅನೀಯರ; rt. ವಿದ್); ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರಸೃಜ್ಉಷ್ who created (from ಸೃಜ್ಅನೀಯರ rt. ಸೃಜ್). Similarly, ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರಪಪ್ರಚ್ಛ್ಉಷ್, ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರಜಗ್ರಭ್ಉಷ್, ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರಬಭೂವ್ಉಷ್, ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರಚಕಾಶ್ಉಷ್, &c. Comp. Sans. विविदुस्, ददृश (Ved.).

Exception.—ಉಷ್ಅನೀಯರಇದ್ಉಷ್ (Sans. विदुस्)—the radical vowel is lengthened; rt. ಇದ್ or ವಿದ್ to know.

In several instances ಅನ್ (instead of ಉಷ್) is added to the reduplic. weak base or to the root, the vowel of which is

* The radical ಋ is changed to ಅರ್.

lengthened: e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀 knowing (rt. 𐬌𐬙); 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 desiring (rt. 𐬌𐬎); 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬛𐬀 giving (rt. 𐬌𐬛), &c. These forms are, in most cases, used participially.

Note.—The feminine base of this participle is formed by suffixing 𐬍 to the weakest base; e. g., weakest base 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀; fem. base 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬍. Similarly, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬍 (rt. 𐬌𐬎). It is declined like 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬛 (see p. 83).

Perfect Participle—Atmanepada.

549. The perfect participle Atmanepada is formed from the corresponding third person plural, which rejects the termination and subjoins the suffix 𐬀𐬌𐬵 (Sans. मान), in other words, it is formed with the suffix 𐬀𐬌𐬵 which is added to the weak base of the reduplicated perfect; in some rare cases the suffix 𐬀𐬌𐬵 is shortened to 𐬀𐬌; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵 (from 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎 3rd per. plu. perf. Atmane.) Similarly, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵 Wester. 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵 Geld.; (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎 to hold): 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 (orig., 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵; rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎); 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵 (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎 वन् to honour); 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵 (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎). Comp. Sans. दान (rt. दा to give); निन्दान (rt. नी to lead). The feminine base is formed by lengthening the final vowel.

Past Participle—Passive.

550. The past participle passive, otherwise called the participle of the perfect of the passive voice, is formed, in Avesta and in Sanskrit, by suffixing 𐬀𐬌𐬵 न directly to the root; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎 कृत done (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎, कृ). Similarly, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎 praised, 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎, (also 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎, see p. 37) मृत dead; 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎 (orig., 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎 + 𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬎𐬀𐬛𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬌𐬎) sat down. Comp. Sans. जित, गीत, मान, &c.

551. When the root ends in ನ್, preceded by ನ್, the nasal is rejected; *e. g.*, ಆಲೋಚ, ಆನ thought (rt. ಆಲುಚ್, ಆನ್); ಆಘಾತ, ಆನ killed (rt. ಆಹನ್, ಆನ್). Sometimes, though rarely, the preceding vowel is lengthened; *e. g.*, ಆಶೃ, ಆನ horn (rt. ಆಶ್, ಆನ್); ಆಪಣ ಆನ (orig., ಆಪ + ಆಣ್; rt. ಆಣ to spread, to extend). Rt. ಶೃಣ (ಆನ to shape, to cut) optionally lengthens its penultimate vowel; *e. g.*, ಆಪಣಿತ, ಆಪಣಿತ, ಆಪಣಿತ

552. A penultimate radical nasal is generally dropped; *e. g.*, ಆಪಣದ bound (orig., ಆಪ + ಬಂಧ್); ಆಪಿಡಿತ tightened (rt. ಪೀಡ್); ಆಪಿಡಿತ extended (rt. ಪೀಡ್); ಆಪಿಡಿತ sprinkled (rt. ಪೀಡ್). Comp. Sans. ಬದ್ಧ bound (rt. ಬಂಧ್); ದಷ್ಟ bitten (rt. ದಂಶ್). Per. بستہ bound (rt. بند); پیوستہ joined (rt. پیوند). Lat. Fissus (from Findo, I cleave). Lat. Scissus (from Scindo, I cut), &c.

553. The final dental and the labial nasals are changed to ನ and ಣ respectively before the affixal ಆಪ; *e. g.*, ಆಪಮೃತ dead (rt. ಮೃ); ಆಪಜ್ಞಾತ known (rt. ಜ್ಞಾ); ಆಪಜಾತ grown (rt. ಜನ್); ಆಪಸ್ಪೃಷ್ಟ enraged (rt. ಸ್ಪೃಶ್); ಆಪಕ್ಷೀಣ vomited (rt. ಕ್ಷಿಣ್), &c.

Exceptions.—ಆಪಯಾತ, ಆನ (orig., ಆಪ + ಯಾತ್; rt. ಯಾ to go); ಆಪಸಂಸ್ಕೃತ, ಆನ offered (orig., ಆಪ + ಸಂ + ಸ್ಕೃತ್)

554. A final ಕ್, ಚ್ or ತ್ is changed to ಸ್ before the affixal ಆಪ; *e. g.*, ಆಪಉಕ್ತ (rt. ವಚ್); ಆಪದೃಷ್ಟ (rt. ದೃಶ್); ಆಪಸ್ಪೃಷ್ಟ (rt. ಸ್ಪೃಶ್); ಆಪಸಂಸೃಷ್ಟ (rt. ಸೃಜ್); ಆಪಸಂಸೃಷ್ಟ (rt. ಸೃಜ್), &c.

555. When a final sibilant is preceded by ಕ್, the latter is changed to its guna equivalent and the former to ಶ; e.g., ಅಳಶಿದ struck, rubbed (rt. ಕಿಳ್); ಅಳಶಿದ sown (rt. ಬಿತ್); ಅಳಶಿದ asked (rt. ಕೇಳ್).

556. A final unaspirate guttural or palatal is changed to ಚ್ before the participial suffix ಅದ; e. g., ಅಳಚ್ಚಿದ formed, moulded (rt. ಕಾಯ); ಅಳಚ್ಚಿ said (rt. ಪೇಳ್); ಅಳಚ್ಚಿದ smitten (rt. ಪೊಡೆ); ಅಳಚ್ಚಿ (rt. ಪೊಡೆ)

557. In several instances ಅ or ಅಳ is substituted for ಅದ; e. g., ಅಱ್ lessened, wanting (rt. ಕಱ); ಅಳಿದ, ಅಂದೆ full of, filled up (rt. ಕಿಳ್); ನಱ =ಅಳಿದ in a state causing shame (lit.), naked; rt. Sans. ನಱ ಪಿಱ (orig., ಪಿಱ) to be ashamed. ಅಳಂಜಿ, ಅಂಜಿನ exhausted, feeble (rt. ಅಂಜು ಅಂಜಿ).—Mark the change of the radical ಱ to ಳಂ

ಅಳಪಿಂಗಿ obtained (rt. ಪಿಂಗ್, Ved. ನಗ); ಅಳಕಿಱಿಕಳಿದ hoarded up, bound (rt. ಕಿಱಿಕಳಿದ Sans. ಧನಿ-ನಗ); ಅಳಗಿಂದೆ respected (orig., ಅಳಗಿಂದೆ; from ಅಳ + ಗ + ಗಿಂದೆ); ಅಳಹಿರಿ honoured, great (rt. ಹಿರಿ Sans. ಗಹ to honour); ಅಳಗಿಂಗಿ green-coloured (rt. ಗಿಂಗಿ); ಅಳಕಳಿದ, ಕಳಿನ fallen (rt. ಪಿಂಗಿ ನಗ); ಅಳಪಿಂಗಿದ redoubled (rt. ಪಿಂಗಿ). Sometimes, the radical ಱ ಱ is changed to ಳ ಳ; e. g., ಅಳಳಿ, ಕಿನ moist, moderate (rt. ಅಳಿ, ಱ to measure).

558. In several instances ಅ or ಅಳ is substituted for ಅದ,

* ಅಳಿ ಅಳಿಂಗಿ ಕಿಱಿಂಗಿ ಕಿಱಿ ಅಳಿ (see Vend. 22, 5).

especially after consonts and vowels; e. g., 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 what is bound or strung (lit.), a nerve (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎 बन्ध् to string); 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀 what is connected (rt. 𐬵𐬀 बन्ध् to bind); 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀 what is given (lit.), a gift (orig., 𐬀𐬎 + 𐬵𐬀); 𐬀𐬵 𐬵𐬀 (orig., 𐬀𐬎 + 𐬵𐬀); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎 तृप्त satisfied (rt. तृप्, तर्प्); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬌, &c.

559. The roots 𐬵𐬌𐬎 (to speak) and 𐬵𐬌𐬎 (to weave) substitute ɔ for 𐬌; e. g., 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎, also 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎); 𐬀𐬵𐬀 (orig., 𐬀𐬎 + 𐬵; rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎). Comp. Sans. उक्त spoken (rt. वच्).

560. A few roots, in Avesta as well as in Sanskrit, do not form the past passive participle in 𐬀𐬎 or 𐬀; its meaning, however, is expressed by certain adjectives derived from the roots; e. g., 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎 क्षरित emanated (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎 क्षर); 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 शुष्क dried up (rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬎 शुष्); 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 strengthened (rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬎); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 hidden, secret (rt. 𐬵𐬀 गुह्); *𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬎 exalted, raised (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎, 𐬵𐬌𐬎). Sans. पक्व cooked, mature (rt. पच्).

561. Causal bases in Avesta as in Sanskrit, form this participle by rejecting 𐬀𐬵𐬀 अय, and inserting the intermediate ɔ 𐬎 before 𐬀𐬎 त; e. g., 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 caus. base of rt. 𐬵𐬀 वर्ध् to grow; past partic. pass. 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀. Similarly, 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 श्वित् to be white); 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀 (orig., 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀 + 𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀). Comp. Sans. बोधित caus. base of rt. बुध् to know; past partic. pass. बोधित, कारित caus. base of rt. कृ to do; past. partic. pass. कारित.

562. In several instances, the suffix 𐬀𐬎 is added to the root after lengthening its vowel without the intermediate ɔ or the characteristic 𐬀𐬵𐬀; e. g., rt. ɔ𐬀 to hear, 𐬀𐬎𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 well-proclaimed

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Edition, p. 227.

(lit.), of high renown; rt. ज्ञा to get. प्रज्ञात flung (as in प्रज्ञात-इषवः इषवस्त the stones flung from the arm Yt. 13, 72). प्रणुत driven (as in प्रणुत-इषमाणे एवयस्त a cloud driven away by the wind V. 6, 82). The feminine base of this participle is formed by lengthening the final vowel; e. g., प्रणीती, fem. base प्रणीती; it is declined like प्रजावत् (*vide* p. 72).

Past Participle—Active.

563. A past active participle is derived from the past passive participle in प्रत (or प्रत) by the addition of the suffix वस्; e. g. rt. कृ to work; past pass. partic. प्रकृत, वनस्पतिकृत one who has worked (वनस्पतिकृत-इषमाणे Yt. 13, 20); similarly, वनस्पतिकृतवत् (orig., +कृतवस्) वनस्पति + प्रकृत, see V. 9, 30); वनस्पतिकृतवत् (from वनस्पति प्रकृत); rt. प्रज्ञा to become propitious; past pass. partic. प्रज्ञात वनस्पतिप्रज्ञात one who has become propitious. Sometimes, the final वनस्पति is shortened to वनस्पत by the dropping of प्र; e. g., वनस्पतिकृतवत्, वनस्पतिकृतवत्, &c. Comp. Sans. कृतवत् one who has done (from कृत past pass. partic.) ज्ञातवत् one who has bathed (from स्नात past pass. partic.). The feminine of this base is formed by the addition of ई; e. g., वनस्पतिकृतवत्ती.

The Gerund.

564. The gerund or verbal noun is generally formed by the addition of the suffix प्रतवै (changeable to प्रतवै after प्र and प्र), प्र or प्रत directly to the root, the vowel of which is generally gunated. This form has nearly the same signification as the Latin gerund in *ndum*, also like *ueiendum*, *memendum*, *regendum*; e. g., प्रतवैतवत्वै proceeding (rt. प्रत-प्रत),

smiting (rt.), praising (rt.). blowing (lit.), wind (rt.); befriending (rt.), praising (rt.); thinking (rt.); knowledge (rt.); receiving, accepting (rt.); forsaking (rt.). Compare the Sanskrit gerundial suffixes त्वा, त्य and य; e. g. नीत्वा having led (rt. नी); दत्त्वा, दत्त, &c.

Verbal Adjectives.

565. Verbal Adjectives are generally formed by suffixing , (changeable to , after अ and), , or sometimes, or directly to the root, the vowel of which is, in most cases, guṇated. These suffixes imply that the action, which the verb expresses, must be done, is allowed or deserves to be done. *E. g.*, worthy of propitiation (rt.); fit to carry (rt.); worthy of adoration (rt.); free from malice; what must or ought to be sung (rt.); (with this Gāthaic word, see V. 10, 19). (rt. to love); (rt. to be glad). worthy of adoration (rt.); daring (rt.); what ought to be spoken (rt. , , Vend. 10, 21.; fit for cultivation (rt.); desirable (rt.); [illegible]

* Comp. Sans. गै (rt. गै to sing).

fit to be invoked (rt. 𐬵𐬀 𐬐) 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 efficacious, what ought to work (rt. 𐬌𐬎𐬀); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 कार्य what ought to be done (rt. 𐬐𐬎𐬀).—Comparo Sans. suffixes तव्य and य in दातव्य what ought to be given (rt. दा); ज्ञातव्य what ought to be known (rt. ज्ञा).

Note.—The feminine base is formed by lengthening the final vowel; *e.g.*, 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀, fem. base 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀

The Infinitive.

666. The infinitive is generally formed by adding to the root the suffix 𐬌𐬎𐬀. *e.g.*, 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬵 Geld. Y. 32, 14 (rt. 𐬵𐬀𐬵); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬐 (rt. 𐬐); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬉𐬌* (rt. 𐬉𐬌); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬌* (rt. 𐬌); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬎𐬌* (rt. 𐬎); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬉𐬌 (rt. 𐬉); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀 (rt. 𐬎 to give); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬐𐬀-𐬵 to discern), 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬐 Geld. (rt. 𐬐-𐬵 to go out) Y. 43, 14; 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀† (rt. 𐬎𐬀), &c.

In several instances, it is formed by suffixing ‡𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 or 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 to the root; *e.g.*, 𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬎𐬀𐬵 to increase, to encourage) Y. 71, 13; 𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬎𐬀𐬵); §𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬀); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬐𐬀 Wester. 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬐𐬀 Geld. (rt. 𐬐𐬀𐬐); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬵𐬀 (rt. 𐬵𐬀); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬎𐬀); 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 (rt. 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, orig., 𐬌 to deceive).

Mark the infinitive forms 𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 Y. 44, 8 𐬐𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 Y. 44, 3 𐬐𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬐𐬀 Y. 43, 9 (rt. 𐬐𐬀 to know).

---

* Mark the lengthening of the radical vowel in the Gâthâ dialect.

† Mark the suffixing of 𐬌𐬎𐬀 to the reduplicated weak base.

‡ Comp. the Vedic suffix सध्यै; *e.g.*, धारयध्यै (rt. धार to worship).

§ Observe the change of 𐬵 to 𐬐 between two vowels.

567. Moreover, the dative singular of any primitive abstract noun may be used in the sense of the infinitive; *e. g.*, ꠀꠁꠂꠃꠄ (dat. sing. of ꠀꠁꠂꠃ); ꠀꠁꠂꠃꠅ꠆ꠇꠈꠉ (dat. sing. of ꠅ꠆ꠇꠈꠉ ꠀꠁꠂꠃ); ꠀꠁꠂꠃꠊꠋꠌ (dat. sing. of ꠊꠋꠌ ꠀꠁꠂꠃ); ꠀꠁꠂꠃꠍꠎꠏꠐꠑ (dat. sing. of ꠍꠎꠏꠐꠑ ꠀꠁꠂꠃ); ꠀꠁꠒꠓꠔꠕ (dat. sing. of ꠓꠔꠕ ꠒꠓ); ꠀꠁꠒꠓꠖꠗꠘ (dat. sing. of ꠒꠓꠖꠗꠘ); ꠙꠚꠛꠜꠝꠞ (dat. sing. of ꠜꠝꠞ ꠚꠛ); ꠙꠚꠛꠟꠠꠡ (dat. sing. of ꠟꠠꠡ). Comp. Sans. इच्छे (dat. sing. of इच्छि wish).

568. **Causal Infinitive.**—*ꠢꠣꠤꠥꠦꠧ꠨꠩꠪꠫꠬꠭꠮꠯꠰ (from ꠢꠣꠤꠥꠦꠧ꠨꠩ caus. base of rt. ꠢꠣꠤ to wound); ꠱꠲꠳꠴꠵꠶꠷꠸꠹꠺꠻꠼꠽ (from ꠱꠲꠳꠴꠵꠶꠷꠸꠹ caus. base of rt. ꠱꠲ to hear).

569. **Passive Infinitive:**—꠾꠿ꡀꡁꡂꡃꡄꡅꡆꡇꡈꡉꡊꡋꡌ; rt. ꡍ (Prof. Justi).

Chapter IX.—Indeclinables.

570. The indeclinables comprise Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions and Interjections.

Adverbs.

Adverbs may be divided into three classes.

571. (1) Those that are formed from nouns substantive and adjective, and, in some rare cases, from participles; *e. g.*, ꡎꡏꡐꡑ, ꡒꡓꡔꡕꡖꡗꡘꡙ, ꡎꡏꡐꡑ at one's will (orig., neut. acc. sing.); ꡎꡏꡐꡑꡚꡛ involuntarily (orig., neut. acc. sing.); ꡜꡝꡞꡟꡠꡡꡢꡣ long-delayed (adj. acc. sing.), ꡤꡥꡦꡧꡨꡩꡪꡫ (adj. acc. sing.), ꡬꡭꡮꡯꡰꡱꡲꡳ (adj. instr. sing.) openly, truly, surely; ꡴꡵꡶꡷꡸꡹꡺꡻꡼ securely (adj. acc. sing.);  unawares, stealthily (neut. instr. sing.); ꣲꣳꣴꣵꣶꣷ꣸꣹꣺ꣻ꣼ꣽꣾꣿ clearly, visibly.

* Comp. the final ꡍꡎ to the Ved. suffix ꡏ; *e. g.*, ꡐꡑꡒ, (rt. ꡓ to hear).

𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (Gâth.) ever (instr. sing.); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (Gâth.) for ever and ever (subs. dat. sing.); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 inwardly (abl. sing.); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 from without (abl. sing.); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 far from (adj. abl. sing.). Comp. Sans. दूरात्. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 in a short time (abs. subs. loc. sing., from 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 aright (adj. nom. sing., from 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 wide, far (adj. acc. neut. sing.) Yt. 8, 40. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 not damped (lit.), dauntlessly adj. nom. sing.).

𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 forthwith, as soon as (orig., pres. partic. Parasmai.; rt. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 to follow); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 dispersed (lit.), aghast, dismayed (past partic. nom. sing.). 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (weakest base from 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵) knowingly, intentionally.

572. (2) Pronominal Adverbs; i.e., Adverbs formed from pronominal bases by adding certain suffixes, viz., 𐬀𐬵 था, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 denoting manner; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 त motion to a place; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 त, 𐬀𐬵 rest in a place; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (Gâth.) त time.

The pronominal bases, to which the aforesaid suffixes are added, are 𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (demonstrat.) signifying either this or that; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (relat.) who, which; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵 (interrog.) which? E. g.

573. **Adverbs of Manner.**—𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (Gâth.), 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (Gâth.), 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (also, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵), 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵, 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 (orig., 𐬀𐬵 +

* 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 is originally 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵; in certain cases 𐬀𐬵 is changed to 𐬀𐬵; e. g., 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 nom. sing.; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬵 dat. and gen. sing.

यत्) in this manner, thus. Mark the compound form 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬙 (Geld.) Visp. 12, 4. For this to us (lit.).

𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 (Gâth.), 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀 (Gâth.) यथा as, in which manner; 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 (Gâth.) 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬙 Geld. Yt. 1, 26. 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 Y. 44, 20; 𐬌𐬀𐬙 (Gâth.) कथम् in what manner, how? [1]𐬌𐬀𐬙 how? 𐬌𐬀 how much?

574. Adverbs of motion to a place:—

𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬙, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 अत्र in this direction. 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 तत्र in that direction. 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 (Gâth.) यत्र wherever. 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 (Gâth.) कुत्र where? in what direction? how?

575. Adverbs of rest in a place:—

[2]𐬌𐬀𐬙, [2]𐬌𐬀𐬙, 𐬌𐬀𐬙, 𐬌𐬀𐬙 (Gâth.), 𐬌𐬀𐬙 Geld. Y. 44, 4. 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀 अत्र, इह: इध (Ved.) here. [3]𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 there, in that place. [4]𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 wherever. 𐬌𐬀𐬙 where? [5]𐬌𐬀𐬙 to any

---

[1] It also means 'when, how much' (see Vend. 9, 8, 9; Vend. 15, 44); 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬙 anywise (Visp. 22, 2).

[2] It also means 'when, where' (see Vend. 5, 41; Vend. 18, 50).

[3] Mark 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬙 Yt. 10, 9 (from 𐬌𐬀𐬙, 𐬌𐬀𐬙 this of the two).

[4] 𐬌𐬀𐬙 अत sometimes signifies 'then, consequently' (see Vend. 20, 4).

[5] From the same âpa derived 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬙 here; 𐬌𐬀𐬙 not here. [6] Mark 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 (Gâth.).

[6] 𐬌𐬀𐬙 सत with; generally used as the first member of a compound word; e. g., 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, &c.

[7] 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬌 from whatever place.

place, anywhere; e. g., 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀 Y. 39, 2; 𐬐𐬀 (Gâth.) where? *𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬵 𐬀 where?

576. **Adverbs of Time:**—𐬀𐬎𐬀 then, upon this. 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 सदा always. 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 सदा whenever; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎; 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬀𐬎𐬀 (Gâth.) कदा when? 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬨𐬀 (Y. 44, 20) at any time, ever.

577. (3) **Adverbial Particles.** A list of them is given below:—

𐬉𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀 (from 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀) far off. 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀 Gâth. (orig., 𐬐𐬀 + 𐬐𐬀𐬨 + 𐬀𐬵𐬀) henceforth, beforehand. 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀 (Gâth.) अधि above, on; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 यथा thus, in this manner; 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 𐬐𐬀𐬵𐬀 in what manner? thus; 𐬐𐬀, 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎, 𐬐𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎 thus, thereupon; yea; verily; 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬎 (orig., 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎) then, thereupon. 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎 then. 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎 मध्यात् in the midst. 𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬀𐬵 far from; sometimes, 𐬉𐬀𐬎 in the Gâthâ dialect (see Y. 32, 11). 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎, 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀 (from 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀 + 𐬀𐬎𐬀) backwards. 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀 (=𐬀𐬎𐬀 + 𐬀𐬵𐬀) afterwards. 𐬉𐬀𐬎𐬀 henceforth, from hence. 𐬀𐬌𐬵 𐬀𐬵 below, down; 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬉 (orig., 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀) अवर further down. 𐬐𐬀, 𐬐𐬀𐬐, 𐬐𐬀 आत thereupon, then. 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌 here (Darmes.); 𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬐𐬀 there (Darmes.); 𐬐𐬀𐬐𐬀𐬎 soon, immediately. 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀 (Gâth.) इति in this manner. 𐬐𐬀𐬐 (Y. 43, 1) indeed; verily. Comp. Ved. च. 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬐 outside the door; 𐬉𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬐 otherwise. 𐬉𐬀𐬐, 𐬉𐬀𐬉𐬐 नु now, indeed, forsooth (Y. 59, 30; Y. 8, 5; Yt. 5, 89; Yt. 13, 145); 𐬉𐬀𐬐-𐬉𐬀𐬉 (Yt. 10, 65) not indeed; it is sometimes used as an emphatic particle; 𐬀𐬵 न, Per. 𐬀𐬵, Lat. *ne* not (see Y. 44, 19).

* Also signifies 'how, which?' (see Vend. 3, 40; Vend. 3, l. 2, 4, 5); 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬐 in any place (Yt. 12, 27).

नेदानीम् (from नेद + इदानीम्) not here; नेहम्, नेहमिम्, नेहेम् not, no. नेतस्तेन (orig., नेतस्तस्मात्) from without. नेम् ईषत् outwardly. नेम्, नेदानीम् q. v. नेदानीम्, Lat. nunc, now. नेदानीम्, नेदा (from नेम्) now: नेदानीम्, नेदानीम्, नेतस्तेनानीम्, नेदानीम्, नेदानीम् (see Yā. 3, 30. 63; Yā. 3, 10). नेतस्त ऊर्ध्वम्, Gr. γυρί, all round, completely. नेतस्तेनानीम्त (orig., नेम् + नेतस्त + नेतस्त) beforehand (Mālv.). नेतस्तेनानीम् नेम् at first, before. नेतस्तेनानीम् नेम् at first. नेतस्त previously, before: नेतस्तेन नेतस्तेन नेतस्तेन just as before. नेतस्तेन (from नेतस्तेन + नेतस्त) backwards. नेतस्तेन, नेतस्तेनानीम् नेतस्त afterwards, behind. नेतस्तेनानीम् (from नेतस्त, the end) outside, sideways. नेतस्त नेतस्त, नेतस्तेन, नेतस्तेन forward, in front, outside. Comp. नेतस्त नेतस्त नेतस्त (=नेम् + नेतस्त) certainly. नेतस्त, नेतस्त, नेतस्तेन surely, always; नेतस्तेनानीम् (super.) most certainly.

नेतस्त is a prohibitive particle, meaning 'no'; generally used with the imperative, the benedictive and the potential; e. g., नेतस्त नेतस्त नेतस्तेनानीम्तेनानीम्तेन नेतस्त नेतस्तेन. As the first member of a compound, it is shortened to नेतस्त; e. g., नेतस्तेनानीम्त, नेतस्तेनानीम्त, नेतस्तेनानीम्त, नेतस्तेनानीम्त, नेतस्तेनानीम्त, नेतस्तेनानीम्त (orig., नेतस्तेनानीम्त, नेतस्तेनानीम्त, &c.) see Yā. 3, 92. नेतस्तेन (orig., नेतस्त + नेतस्त) not here. नेतस्त (very rarely used) not; नेतस्त नेतस्त not indeed; e. g., नेतस्तेनानीम्त...नेतस्त नेतस्त Yā. 10. 60.

नेतस्तेन नेतस्त, नेतस्त quickly, instantly. नेतस्त नेतस्त, नेतस्त नेतस्त when; नेतस्तेनानीम् (Gaut.) ever, always. नेतस्तेनानीम्त नेतस्तेनानीम्त

(Gold. Yt. 8, 38), 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 𐬌 𐬉𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 as long as, until.* 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 ever, continually (rt. 𐬨𐬀 to remain, to continue). 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 equally, alike; exactly, just; 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 just as before.

Prepositions.

578 Prepositions, which serve to determine more precisely the sense of the cases, are used with the inflected forms of nouns and pronouns (except the nom. and the voc.), and usually precede them.

List of Prepositions.

𐬀𐬉𐬌 अपि from, after, around, on, to, up to, near to. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀, 𐬀𐬉𐬌 (Gāth.) अपि on, about, for, concerning. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 अपिनत् round about, from every side, near. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 (from 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀 compars. of 𐬀𐬉𐬌) beneath, under. 𐬀𐬉𐬌 on; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌 𐬉𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 on a bed (Vend. 18, 26). 𐬀𐬉𐬌 अनु agreeable to, after. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 (Gāth.) अन्तर between, under, in the midst of; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 Vend. 1, 8.

𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀 अप far from, away from, *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀 apart from the former two (see Vend. 15, 48). 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀, 𐬀𐬉𐬌 (Gold.), 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀 (Gāth.) अप towards, near, down, off. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀 (from 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀) towards, near, up to. 𐬀𐬉𐬌 आ † to, towards, near, towards, up to, at. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀 close to, near. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀 (Gāth.) उप towards, near, by, to. 𐬀𐬉𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 Gold. (Yt. 13, 146) indeed to us.

---

* Also in compound forms; *e. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 ever in joy.

† *E. g.*, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 (= 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 + 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌); 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 (= 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌 + 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌), &c.

𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 उपरि over, above. 𐬉𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬙 तिरस् over, through, across. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬙 प्रति opposite to, against, facing, on, towards, from, in conformity to, compared with, for, in exchange of. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 towards, to, against. 𐬀𐬵𐬌 परि around, about, far from, except. 𐬀𐬙 पर, परा by, near, before, back. 𐬉𐬌𐬙 (from 𐬀𐬙) before, in exchange of, for.

𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬉𐬌𐬙 (=𐬉𐬌+𐬀𐬙) before. 𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵𐬀 (from 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬙) पश्चात् after, from behind. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀 पश्च behind, after. 𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀 behind.

𐬉𐬌𐬎, 𐬉𐬌𐬎 सम् along with, together with. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎 सना ?! from, for; e. g., 𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎 𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀𐬵 the son for his father.

𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬉𐬀 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎 = 𐬀𐬵 (orig., 𐬀𐬵𐬌) below; 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬉𐬀 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎 = 𐬀𐬌 (orig., 𐬀𐬌𐬌) above. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎 𐬉𐬌𐬙 = 𐬉𐬌 except, different, from. 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎 𐬀𐬙 with, accompanied with.

573. Conjunctions.

𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬎𐬀 (Gâth.) अपि also, even, moreover, though, however. 𐬀𐬎𐬀 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬎 even so much. 𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬎 on the contrary. 𐬉𐬎𐬎, 𐬉𐬎 (Gâth.) चन् but; 𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬎 (Yt. 8, 15) आदि et cetera, others, the like. 𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬀𐬎𐬀 (Gâth.) उत also, and.

𐬀𐬎, 𐬀𐬎 (Gâth.) च and; it is an inseparable copulative particle, and is always subjoined to the word to which it belongs. When two or more words are to be joined, it is, in most cases, affixed at the end of each word: e.g., 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎 Yt. 43, 87; 𐬀𐬉𐬌𐬎𐬀 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬎 𐬉𐬎𐬀𐬀𐬎 𐬉𐬌𐬙𐬀

Vend. 2, 3. Sometimes, when two persons or things are to be joined, it is dropped, mostly in the first place; *e. g.*, Y. 9, 10. Y. 20, 4.

It is also used to join sentences; *e. g.*, Gâh 1, 10.

Sometimes, when more than two persons or things are to be joined, the particle is altogether omitted; *e. g.*, Y. 26, 7.

When affixed to a single word, it only gives force or emphasis to it; *e. g.*, of two men, he only (Vend. 4, 48); on the highest summits (Vend. 6, 45).

(Gâth.) for it enters; like it is always affixed at the end of a word and gives an indefinite signification to it; *e. g.*, Sometimes both the particles and are subjoined to the same word; *e. g.*, (Y. 65, 4).

Note 1.—Inflected words when abridged or changed, assume before the particles and their full or original forms; *e. g.*, but but

* Properly speaking, it is the nom. and acc. neut. of the indefinite pronoun any. Compare lat. quid.

[illegible], [illegible], but [illegible]; [illegible], but [illegible]; [illegible], but [illegible]; [illegible], but [illegible]; [illegible], but [illegible]; [illegible], but [illegible], &c.

Note 2.—The same particles (*viz.*, [illegible] and [illegible]) insert [illegible] after [illegible]; *e.g.*, [illegible], but [illegible]; [illegible], but [illegible], &c.

[illegible] यदि because; [illegible] = [illegible] + [illegible] (see Y. 46, 3).

Note:—The final vowels of monosyllabic words are, in most cases, long; *e.g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], &c.

[illegible], [illegible] [illegible], [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] as; in the same way as, as much as. [illegible] if, in case; that is, *viz.*; [illegible], [illegible] (Y. 33, 4) because. [illegible] (from [illegible] + [illegible]) than. [illegible], [illegible] (Gâth.) [illegible], [illegible] यदि if, although; in compound forms [illegible] for if...; [illegible] [illegible] for if to me...; [illegible] for she (will grant) it.

[illegible] वा, Lat. -ve or; [illegible]...[illegible] वा...वा either...or. As a disjunctive particle, it follows every word it disjoins; *e.g.*, [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] a man or a woman; [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] a dog, a fox, or a wolf, &c. It is also used to separate or disjoin two sentences; *e.g.*, [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]... [illegible] [illegible] Vend. 5, 8, 9.

[illegible] is also used in compound forms with other particles; *e.g.*, [illegible], [illegible], [illegible] (Gâth. Yt. 1, 17).

In some rare instances [illegible] is omitted; *e.g.*, [illegible] [illegible] ...[illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] but

if the vessel be of earth, of wood, or of clay...(Vend. 7, 75) Vide Vend. 8, 10.

580. Interjections.

𐬀𐬵, 𐬌𐬀 O! Oh! *E. g.*, 𐬀𐬵 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬵 O holy Zarathushtra! (Vend. 18, 1). 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 (from 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀 calamity, affliction) 𐬌𐬀, Fie! Woe! *E. g.*, 𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 Woe to me! Yt. 8, 14. 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀 hail! brave! noble! well done! 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬵 𐬌𐬀 Hail to thee, O man! Vend. 7, 52; 𐬌𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬙𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 Hail to thee, O Hom! 𐬌𐬀 alas! Oh unfortunate! Vend. 19, 46. 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬙𐬀 Woe! *E. g.*, 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 𐬙𐬀𐬙𐬀 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀𐬙𐬀 Woe to that man! Yt. 10, 138.

581. Prefixes.

A prefix, as its name implies, is a significant particle placed before a word or a root, in order to modify its meaning.

It should be noted that some particles, which are used with the inflected forms of nouns and pronouns as prepositions, are also used as prefixes, as will be seen from the following list. Moreover, 𐬀, 𐬌, 𐬵 and 𐬌𐬀 are inseparable, i.e., they can never be used by themselves without being prefixed to a word; while others, such as 𐬉𐬀, 𐬙, 𐬌𐬙, 𐬌 (𐬌) may optionally come in a separate form: *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 ... 𐬉𐬀 ; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀 𐬉𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀 ... 𐬙 ; 𐬌𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬙𐬀 ... 𐬙 ; 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 ... 𐬌𐬙 ; 𐬌𐬀𐬙𐬀 ... 𐬌 ; 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀 ... 𐬌, 𐬵𐬀𐬭𐬙𐬀𐬱𐬀𐬌𐬀 ... 𐬌, &c.

582. List of Prefixes and Prepositions used as Prefixes.

𐬀, 𐬌, 𐬵 𐬙. are inseparable prefixes implying 'negation, want of'; *e. g.* 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬭𐬀, 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵 (= 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀 + 𐬵), 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬀𐬵 = 𐬵𐬀. Comp. Sans. अज्ञान, अनन्त = अज्ञ, अ + अन्त).

In some instances, ꣡ is a substitute for ꣠, before adjectives beginning with ꣢; e. g. ꣠꣢꣣꣤꣥꣦꣧꣨꣩ (= ... + ꣠) not working; ꣡꣪꣫꣣꣬꣭꣮꣯꣰꣱ (= ... + ꣠) not knowing; ꣡ꣲꣳꣴꣵꣶ (= ... + ꣠) having no family or household; ꣡ꣷ꣸꣹꣺ꣻ꣼ꣽꣾ (= ... + ꣠) sleeping lightly.

Exceptions— ꣠ꣿꣀꣁꣂꣃ꣄ꣅ, ꣠꣆꣇꣈꣉꣊, ꣠꣋꣌꣍꣎꣏꣐꣑.

Note 1.—꣠ is used before consonants, and ꣡ before vowels: e. g., ꣡꣒꣓, ꣠꣔꣕꣖. Sometimes, though seldom, ꣗ is substituted for ꣡; e. g., ꣡꣘꣙꣚꣗ (orig., ꣡꣘꣙꣚ + ꣡).

Note 2.—꣠꣱ (an abridged form of ꣠꣡꣱) is prefixed before ꣱ (any one), and ꣠ꣲꣳ (here): e. g., ꣠꣱ꣴꣵꣶꣷ (nom. sing.), ꣠꣱꣸꣹꣺ꣻ (acc. sing.) no one; ꣠ꣲꣳ꣼ꣽ not here.

꣡ꣾꣿ back; probably an abridged, though rare, form of ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ; e. g., ꣂꣃ꣡ꣾꣿ꣄ꣅ to bring luck.

꣡ꣾꣿ꣆ after full of, around, in the midst of, behind, near to, in, on: e. g., ꣇꣈꣡ꣾꣿ꣆, ꣂꣃ꣊꣡ꣾꣿ꣆, ꣠꣋꣌꣍꣎꣏꣐꣑꣡ꣾꣿ꣆ (= ꣠꣋꣌꣍꣎꣏꣐꣑ + ꣡ꣾꣿ꣆); ꣠꣱꣒꣓꣡ꣾꣿ꣆. Sometimes ꣡ꣾꣿ꣆ is substituted for ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ, e. g., ꣠꣔꣕꣖꣗꣘꣙꣚꣛꣡ꣾꣿ꣆ (= ꣠꣔꣕꣖꣗꣘꣙꣚꣛ + ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ + ꣡); ꣠꣜꣝꣞꣟꣠꣡ꣾꣿ꣆ (+ ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ + ꣡); ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ꣢꣣꣤꣥ (rt. ꣦꣧꣨꣩ + ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ to blow away; ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ꣪꣫꣬꣭꣮꣯꣰ acc. pass. 3 sing. (rt. ꣱ꣲꣳꣴꣵ + ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ to inform). Comp. Per. ꣷ in ꣸꣹ (Av. ꣡ꣾꣿꣀꣁ).

꣡ꣾꣿ꣉, ꣡ꣾꣿ꣊ (Gâth.) *adv.* above, on high, towards, upon, around; largely, much; *e. g.*, ꣱ꣲ꣡ꣾꣿ꣉ ꣳꣴꣵꣶꣷ꣸ to shine on high; ꣹꣺ꣻ꣡ꣾꣿ꣉ to overpower; ꣼ꣽ꣡ꣾꣿ꣉ to go towards or to. Before ꣾ, ꣿ and ꣀ ꣡ꣾꣿ꣉ is changed to ꣡ꣾꣿ꣊, *e. g.*, ꣁꣂ꣡ꣾꣿ꣊

[illegible], [illegible], [illegible]. Comp. Sans. अधिगम, अभिगम.

[illegible] अनु after, along, according to; e. g., [illegible] to think after; [illegible] to speak after; [illegible] to act after; [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] [illegible] (see Yt. 3, 15).—Comp. Sans. अनुकरण, अनुकार.

[illegible] अन्तर् inter (Lat.) between; e. g., [illegible] to stand between; [illegible] Sans. अन्तर्-चर् to move in the midst. [illegible] अप away, off, far from, implying 'migration, privation'; e. g., [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible], [illegible].—Comp. Sans. अप-गम, अपकार.

[illegible], [illegible] अव near, by, down, away, off, towards, implying 'privation, error'; e. g., [illegible], [illegible]; [illegible] to carry off; [illegible], [illegible] to cut off. [illegible] to decrease (from [illegible] वृध् to grow); [illegible] to wither (from [illegible] पीव to grow corpulent or fat). [illegible], in some rare instances, implies 'opposed to'; e. g., [illegible] opposed to Mithra, i. e., the foe of Mithra.

[illegible], [illegible], [illegible] sufficiently, abundantly; e. g., [illegible] (orig., [illegible]); [illegible], [illegible]

[illegible] आ, Per. آ towards, to, at, near, by; e. g., [illegible] Sans. आ-गम् to approach; [illegible] آوردن to bring. Sometimes, though rarely, [illegible] is substituted for [illegible]; e. g., [illegible] (for [illegible]; rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible] to come); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (rt. [illegible]); [illegible] (orig., [illegible] + [illegible] + [illegible]; rt. आ-आप to acquire, to receive).

ava towards, near, by; e.g., avaiti, avagama.

ā, ā (Gāth.) ā on, near, under, into; e.g. āsīdati Sans. ā-sad; āgacchati (=ā+gam+chati)

ud, ut ud on high, upward, loudly, out, out of, wanting, exclusive of; e.g., ut Sans. ud to go up, to rise; udaya, ucca, ukkaṭṭha, ukkaṇṭhita, ugga, uṭṭhāna, ukkhipati.

duṭṭha, dūsita (Gāth.) dviṣ, Trans. (Lat.) over, cross, worse, evil, opposite; e.g., duṭṭhacitta, duṭṭhamānasa (Gāth.) evil mind; duṭṭhaṃ dūsetvā, duṭṭhaṃ dūsetvāna to hold in derision, to despise (vide duṭṭhadosa, duṭṭhavāca V. 45, 11).

dubbha, dubbha, dur, dus, duḥ, duṣ bad, evil, contemptible; e.g., dubbhāsita, dubbhāsa, dubbhāsita, dubbhāsana, dubbhāsanā, dubbhāsī evil-minded (lit.), an enemy; dubbhi=durabhi+dhā ill-name. Mark dubbhikkha (V. 45, 5) evil monarchs.

In some rare instances, dubbha is changed to its guṇa equivalent dobbha (orig., dobhaṇa); e.g., dobbhāsitamāsana, dobbhāsitamāsanā. It should be observed that ud and dubbha are used before vowels, semi-vowels and sonants; before hard letters, ut and dubbha are pronounced. Exceptions:—udapāna, udapādi, dubbha

ni ni = downward, backward, far from, out of, implying "negation, deprived of"; e.g., nikkhaṇati to dig, nikkhipati to put down, nikkhaṇitā to sadden (nikkhaṇitā to gladden); nindā=nis+dā curse (contrast pasaṃsā=pra+śaṃsā praise). Before ut it is changed to nu, e.g., nuṭṭhahati to sit down, nuṭṭhāpaka a protector.

ā lengthens its final vowel when it is used separately; e. g.,

ud, ūd; ut (Goth.) उत्, उद्, उ out of, forth, from; e.g.

upari ऊपरि back, again, against, near, by, towards; e. g.,

Sometimes, though rarely, upari is changed to upāri; e.g.,

(rt.)

upari परि round about, all round, cross (questioning), far from; e.g., to enclose on all sides, to cross-question; to be far from working, not to work. upāri is substituted for upari in (rt. to go all around). Comp. Sans. परि-पद् to embrace.

Note.— upari and upāri affix ग to before ए, ऐ and ओ; e.g.,

upa उप near, under, secondary, inferior; e.g.,

ava अव off, down, away, from, away, out of, beyond, different from; e.g., ; ; ; . is originally compara. of avya अव्य. Comp. Per. in =ni+ava to scatter, to disperse.

ā आ to, at, to forward, forth, excessive, lengthwise, prominent, out of, from from, distinct from; e. g.,

also ;

Sometimes, especially in the Gâthâ dialect, and are substituted for , *vide* Y. 11, 18; Y. 38, 3; Y. 46, 3.

(from or) forward, pre-eminent; *e. g.*, (Yt. 12, 1. 2) exalted pre-eminent or progress-making; Yt. 5, 108.

with, together with, including; *e. g.*,

(rarely) Pt. *ç.* apart, separate from; different from, exclusive of, contrary to; extremely, through and through, all around; *e. g.*, , , ; far from malice (Y. 54, 2); Yt. 15, 55; Geld. Yt. 15, 81 (also, the border) (Y. 10, 1). = to melt; = .

far off; implying 'departure from'; *e. g.*, (Vend. 7, 2) = (rt. to go away—off).

Note. is very rarely used as a prefix.

(Gâth.), *sl.* , , , , , Syl, Syn, Syn (Gr.), together, with, completely, wholly; *e. g.*, , , , , ; , (Gâth.); = a colleague; = a meeting; , , (Gâth.) to combine; (Gâth.).

𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌 𐬨𐬀, together, accompanied with, united; *e. g.*, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀

𐬨𐬀 or 𐬵 good, well, beautifully, much, properly; *e. g.*, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌. Sometimes, 𐬨𐬀 is changed to 𐬨𐬁 or 𐬨𐬌; *e. g.*, 𐬨𐬁𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀 (also 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀); 𐬨𐬌𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬨𐬁𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀. 𐬨𐬀 affixes, like 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 and 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀, 𐬵 before 𐬀 and 𐬌; *e. g.*, 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀-𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀, -𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀-𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀, 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀-𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀

Observation.—Two or, in some rare instances, three prefixes are met with in the same word; *e. g.*, 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌, 𐬨𐬁𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 (= 𐬨𐬁𐬨𐬀 + 𐬨 + 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀); 𐬨𐬁𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 (𐬎𐬀 + 𐬨 + 𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 + ..); 𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 (= .. + 𐬨 + 𐬎𐬀); 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀 (= .. + 𐬵 + 𐬨𐬀); 𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬨𐬀𐬵𐬀 unbefitted, exceedingly pure or clear (𐬨𐬁𐬨𐬀 + 𐬨 + 𐬨𐬀). Comp. Skas. श्वेत white.

Chapter X.

Notable Features of the Gâthâ Dialect.

583. The Gâthâs (Av. 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬀, Sanst. गाथा:) are small collections of metrical compositions, highly poetical and full of deep meaning, containing hymns, prayers and other subjects pregnant with philosophical and abstract ideas. They are five in number and comprise 17 sections, equal in extent, according to the Rev. Dr. L. H. Mills, to about twenty-five to thirty hymns of the Rigveda. These are Ahunavaiti (Av. Ahunavaiti), Yaç. 28—34; Ushtavaiti (Av. Ushtavaiti), Yaç. 43—46; Spentomaiti (Av. Spentâ-Mainyû), Yaç. 47—50; Vohu-khshathra (Av. Vohû-khshathrâi), Yaç. 51; Vahishtoishti (Av. Vahishtoishti), Yaç. 53. Besides these, there are other sections and smaller pieces written in the Gâthâ dialect, though inferior in sublimity and poetic

diction to the five Gâthâs, *viz.*, Yaç. 4, para. 26; Yaç. 11, paras. 17-18; Yaç. 12, 13, 14; Yaç. 15, paras. 2-3; Yaç. 27, paras. 13-14; Yaç. 56, 58.

584. The peculiar and distinctive features of the Gâthâ dialect, as distinguished from the Avesta language, are—

1. The invariable lengthening of the final words, as opposed to their remaining short in other than monosyllabic Avestaic words. *E.g.*, Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]. Av. [Avestan] instr. sing. (originally, [Avestan] + [Avestan]), [Avestan] nom. and acc. plu. (orig., [Avestan] + [Avestan]).

2. The free and frequent use of [Avestan], as a substitute for [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] or [Avestan] of the Avesta writing. *E.g.*, Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan], [Avestan], [Avestan], &c.

3. The softening of consonants, or the change of aspirate consonants into unaspirate ones of the same class. *E.g.*, Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan] he gives; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan].

4. The substitution of [Avestan] for [Avestan] and [Avestan] for [Avestan]. *E.g.*, Gâth. [Avestan] = Av. [Avestan]; Gâth. [Avestan]

=Av. ; Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. =Av. , &c.

5. The occasional insertion of , ɛ or ə in a word without affecting its sense. *E. g.*, Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. fem. (from youthful) Geld. Y. 53, 3.

6. The occasional use of , as a substitute for the medial , or ɛ. *E. g.*, Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. = Av. ; Gâth. = Av. ; Gâth. (rt.)

7. The occasional change of final to . *E. g.*,

8. The substitution of for before the case-terminations and . *E. g.*,

9. The frequent change of (gen. sing. of bases ending in) into (sometimes, , fem.). *E. g.*, Gâth. =Av. . Gâth. Gâth. =Av. ; Gâth. =Av. Gâth. fem.

10. The terminal suffix in the acc. pla. of bases ending in ; *e. g.*,

11. The lengthening of the vowel in 𐬀𐬵𐬌 (instr. plu.); e. g., 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬵𐬌, &c.

12. A partial change in the form of certain particles; e. g., 𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 (Y. 32, 4) for 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌; 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌 in what manner; 𐬀𐬌𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌𐬌 [ever.

13. The frequent use of the particles 𐬀𐬌, 𐬀, 𐬀𐬌, 𐬀𐬌

14. The richness of aorist forms, which, in the Avesta literature, are scarce; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, &c. For particulars, *vide* the Chapter on the Aorist, p. 241 *et seq.*

15. The frequent dropping of the verbal termination 𐬀𐬌 (pres. 1st sing. Parasmai.) in the 1st, 4th, 6th and 10th conjugational classes; e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌, &c.

16. The occasional dropping of the characteristic mark of the class; e. g., Gâth. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 (5th class) act thou (imperat. 2 sing. Atmane.; 𐬀𐬌𐬌+𐬌𐬌); Gâth. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 (3rd class)=Av. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌; Gâth. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 (3rd class)=Av. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌; Gâth. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 (3rd class)=Av. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 (imperat.); 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌 (imperf. 3 sing. Atmane.) he wept (6th class; the affixal 𐬀 of the class is dropped); Gâth. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌=Av. 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌 (pres. subjunc. 1 sing. Atmane.).

17. The substitution of 𐬀𐬌 and 𐬀𐬌 for 𐬀𐬌 and 𐬀𐬌, respectively, (verbal terminations of imperat. 2 sing. and plu. Atmane.); e. g., 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌𐬌, 𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬌,

𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎, 𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬵; 𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌

18. The usual infinitive formation by the termination 𐬌𐬎𐬌, generally equivalent to the dat. sing. of any primitive abstract noun in Avesta; *e. g.*, 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌, 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌, 𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬞𐬀𐬎𐬌, &c.

19. The special inflected forms of the Personal Pronouns, and the Possessives formed from the bases of Personal Pronouns of the first and second persons (*viz.*, 𐬩𐬀, 𐬩𐬋, 𐬩𐬋𐬌𐬎, 𐬩𐬋𐬌, 𐬩𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌); *e. g.*, Gâth. 𐬞𐬋=Av. 𐬞𐬋; Gâth. 𐬞𐬋, 𐬞𐬋, 𐬞𐬋=Av. 𐬞𐬋; Gâth. 𐬞𐬋𐬌 =Av. 𐬞𐬋𐬌; Gâth. 𐬞𐬋𐬌, 𐬞𐬋𐬌, 𐬞𐬋𐬌=Av. 𐬞𐬋𐬌; Gâth. 𐬞𐬋𐬎𐬌, 𐬞𐬋𐬎𐬌=Av. 𐬞𐬋𐬎𐬌; Gâth. 𐬞𐬋𐬌=Av. 𐬞𐬋𐬌; Gâth. 𐬞𐬋𐬌 (Y. 31, 10)=Av. 𐬞𐬋𐬌 she. For possessives and pronominal adjectives used in the Gâthâ dialect, *vide* p. 158 *et seq.* For further particulars of the Gâthâ dialect, *vide* Chapters III., VII. and VIII.

Chapter XI—Syntax.

585. Syntax is that part of grammar which treats of the proper arrangement of words in a sentence, and consists of concord and government.

Concord is the agreement or proper relation of words in a sentence in gender, number, person or case. Government is the influence of a word in regard to construction in case or mood.

586. There is no article, either definite or indefinite, in Avesta, as we have in English. The noun itself, without any article, is used, having a definite or an indefinite meaning, the same being understood from the context; *e. g.*, 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌𐬨𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 before the sky, the waters, the land, the cattle, the plants, the fire, the holy man (Y. 19, 4, 2). 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 a holy man built a house (Vend. 3, 5); 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 𐬞𐬋𐬌𐬎𐬌 but if (the dead one) be a warrior (Vend. 5, 29).

587. But when a person or a thing is to be specified or particularised, the demonstrative adjective is prefixed to the noun; e. g. ..ꬰꬱꬲꬳꬴꬵꬶꬷꬸꬹꬺꬻꬼꬽꬾꬿ  the land was replenished with flocks and herds ..(Vend. 2, 8);  these words (Vend. 11, 3).

588. Adjectives and participles used as adjectives always agree in gender, number and case with the substantives or pronouns they qualify; e. g.   Yt. 14, 9;  ;  Vsp. 2, 5;  ()   Yt. 13, 10; 

Note.—The same rule holds good in Sanskrit and Latin.

589. Adjectives generally follow the nouns which they qualify; e. g.  (Yt. 1, 1);  (Y. 25, 2);  the fairest body (Yt. 5, 34).

590. In many cases, however, adjectives precede nouns; e. g.  (Yt. 5, 42);  .. (Gâd.) O good, most beneficent Ardvî Sûra (Yt. 5, 26).

591. Adjectives signifying dimension such as long, large, broad, deep, high, &c., come after the nouns they refer to; e. g.   of this wide, round earth, whose ends lie afar (Vend. 19, 4).  (Vend. 2, 25);  I revere this wide and expanded earth (Y. 10, 4);  .. a hole, two fingers deep (Vend. 9, 6).

with the healing virtues of (their) blessed gifts as wide-spread as the earth, as far-spread as the rivers, as wide-reaching as the sun (Mills) Y. 60, 4.

592. Two or more adjectives qualify a noun without being joined by the conjunctive particle ; *e. g.*, (Y. 62, 5). For further illustration, *vide* Yt. 13, 45. 57; Y. 57, 2; Vend. 7, 27, &c.

593. Comparative adjectives are followed by , or sometimes, , conveying the sense of *than*; *e. g.*, ... Vend. 4, 47; Yt. 13, 17. Vend. 5, 22. For further illustration, *vide* Vend. 13, 41; Yt. 13, 64.

Note.— is also used in the sense of *as, in the manner that*; *e. g.*, thou shalt gain such a boon as the ruler Vadhaghana gained (Vend. 19, 6); praise me as the other Saoshyants praise (Y. 9, 2). For further illustration, *vide* Yt. 14, 33; Vend. 7, 8.

594. Pronouns agree in gender, number and person with the nouns for which they stand; e. g., ... Vend. 5, 24; ... Y. 62, 7; ... Y. 65, 5; ... Y. 57, 29; ... Y. 9, 1; ... Vend. 5, 58.

595. Pronominal and numeral adjectives are placed before the nouns they qualify; e. g., ... the whole entire body (Vend. 6, 24); ... in the same place (Yt. 13, 53) ... for both the worlds (Yt. 13, 3); ... six months (Vend. 7, 16); ... Vend. 2, 30; ... for ten nights (Yt. 13, 49); ... Y. 9, 19-21, &c.

596. The first and the second personal pronouns are used both in the masculine and the feminine; e. g., ... (mas.) ... Y. 9, 1; ... (mas.) ... Vend. 11, 10; ... (fem.) ... Vend. 8, 26. For further illustration, vide Yt. 5, 11; Yt. 1, 25; Vend. 2, 1. 2. 3; Y. 60, 12 (mas.); Yt. 5, 91. 92. 93; Yt. 17, 17. 21 (fem.).

597. As the subject of a verb, the first and the second personal pronouns, both in the singular and plural, usually precede the verb;

e. g., ... (Vend. 1, 1); ... Y. 9, 18; ... (Yt. 10, 31); ... Geld. (Yt. 13, 34). For further illustration, *vide* Y. 9, 1; Vend. 5, 17; Visp. 11, 11; Vend. 7, 57; Y. 65, 14. But when these pronouns are followed by a relative clause, they generally follow the verb; e. g., Vend. 1, 3. 5. 6 &c.; Vend. 5, 15

598. In many instances, however, the first and the second personal pronouns, as the subject of the verb, are dropped, the sense being conveyed from the personal termination of the verb; e. g., Y. 1, 1; ... (Geld.) may'st thou hear our sacrificial chants, be propitiated by our Yasna; may'st thou be present at our Yasna; may'st thou come to us to help (Darmes.) Y. 68, 9; ... that we should think, and speak, and do these thoughts and words and actions (Mills) Y. 35, 5; ... Yt. 10, 2; ... heed ye (Y. 33, 5); ... which you said to me (was) best (Y. 43, 11).

599. As the subject of a verb, the third personal pronoun (in the three genders) always precedes the verb; e. g., ... does he turn in fright (Mills) Y. 57, 18; ... she makes the souls

of the righteous go up above the Hara-Berezaiti (Vend. 19, 30); [illegible] Vend. 18, 75.

600. Personal pronouns, as the object of the verb, are either direct or indirect. When they are the direct object, they take the accusative case; but when used as the indirect object, they are put in the dative case: e. g., [illegible] ...that no one may afflict me (Yt. 1, 6); [illegible] if I have offended thee (Y. 1, 21); [illegible] Yima replied unto me, (saying)...Vend. 2, 3; [illegible] give me glory and nourishment (Y. 62, 4); [illegible] ...grant me this boon (Yt. 5, 29).

601. The demonstrative pronouns [illegible] (or [illegible]) and [illegible] are used (1) before a noun; (2) with reference to a noun. In the former case, they are said to be pronominal adjectives; e. g., [illegible] with this word (Vend. 5, 21); [illegible] on that night Yt. 22, 1; [illegible] that man Yt. 1, 24; [illegible] these stars (Vend. 9, 41); [illegible] (Geld.) this is the praise of the Mazdayaçnian religion Y. 12, 9. [illegible] for his splendour and glory Y. 57, 3, &c.

602. The relative pronoun [illegible] agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person, and not in case; e. g., [illegible] (meaning) Y. 9, 8; [illegible]

[illegible] (mas. du.) Y. 57, 2; [illegible] (mas. plu.) Y. 9, 15, &c.

603. But when [illegible] is used as an explanatory term—a use peculiar to Avesta alone—it agrees with the noun or pronoun to which it refers in case (as, e. g., [illegible] (nom.); [illegible] (acc.) Vend. 1, 5. [illegible] (acc.) Vend. 2, 1.

604. The relative particle [illegible], which is the neut. nom. of [illegible], is, in several cases, used indiscriminately for all genders, numbers and cases; e. g., [illegible] Y. 10, 17; [illegible] Vend. 4, 50. [illegible] Vend. 5, 15, [illegible] Vend. 19, 4.

605. The verb agrees in number and person with its subject, whether expressed or understood; e. g., [illegible] I created ...(1st per. sing.); [illegible] who (3rd per. plu.) strove after righteousness (Y. 26, 4) [illegible] (the subject is understood) which thou didst declare to me Y. 34, 13. [illegible] since the two spirits made the creation Y. 57, 17. For further illustration, *vide* Vend. 13, 49; Yt. 13, 77; Yt. 10, 82; Yt. 8, 22; Yt. 15, 40. In several cases, however, a dual subject optionally takes the verb in the sing. or the plu. e. g., [illegible] (sing.) [illegible] Yt. 10, 113; *vide* Vend. 7, 52. [illegible] (plu.) Vend. 2, 41; *vide* Vend. 13, 51.

606. When two subjects in the singular are joined by the con-

junctive particle च (and), the verb is put in the dual; e. g., ...सूर्यश्चासुरादित्यश्च प्रायातां... the sun and the father sallied forth... (V. 9, 5).

607. Three or more subjects in the singular, joined by the copulative conjunction च, take the verb in the plural; e. g., ...ऋतस्य पन्थामन्वेमि सप्तशतैर्वाजिभिर्वहमानः... Y. 11, 1; ...अग्निर्वायुः सूर्यश्चन्द्रमा... Vend. 7, 58.

608. When two or more subjects in the singular are disjoined by the particle वा (or), the verb is put in the singular; e. g., ...यदा वै कश्चिदस्यान्यतरो वा (when) a dog or a man of that house dies (Vend. 5, 39); ...यदि वै मम पुत्रो वा... Vend. 5, 20.

609. Two or more subjects in the singular, preceded by the negative particle नहि, drop वा and take the verb in the singular; e. g., नहि ते क्षत्रं न सहो न मन्युं न बलं न विष्णो देवहितं न धाम Vend. 5, 3.

610. When two or more subjects in the dual and plural are disjoined by वा, the verb is put in the plural; e. g., ...यदि वा द्वौ वा त्रयो वा तिष्ठेयुः... and adjoining it (i. e., the carpet). If there be other two, five, fifty or one hundred men (Vend. 5, 27).

611. Collective nouns generally take a verb in the singular; e. g., ...यदि वा गवां यूथं वा गवां व्रजं वा... may a herd of kine be with thee and a

multitude of men (Mills) Y. 62, 10; Yt. 13, 52. For further illustration, *vide* Vend. 7, 55, 56. the whole corporeal world lives by eating (Vend. 3, 33). *Vide* Vend. 1, 1; 15, 1; 18, 16, 24.

612. In a sentence the subject mostly comes first, then the object (if there be any), and lastly the verb; *e. g.*, (Y. 11, 3); Vend. 19, 29; Y. 9, 22. For further illustration, *vide* Vend. 3, 2; Vend. 7, 70; Vend. 19, 4; Y. 13, 1; Y. 26, 1; Y. 55, 1; Y. 57, 6.

Note.—It should be observed that the verbs and the like generally precede the subject and the object; *e. g.*, Yt. 22, 11; Vend. 19, 8, &c.

613. But when either the object or the verb is to be emphasized or specially pointed out, it precedes the subject; *e. g.*, Hun ut ome hymns of homage and of praise would I faithfully serve (Mills) Y. 65, 8. up started Zarathushtra, forward went Zarathushtra Vend. 19, 4. *Vide* 5, 19, &c.

614. Transitive verbs in the active voice govern a direct object in the accusative case; *e. g.*,

who (i. e., Sraosha) first chanted the Gâthâs (Y. 57, 8).

615. But when the object is qualified by an adjective or a relative clause, the verb is optionally placed before or after it; e. g., ... Y. 9, 8; *vide* Y. 9, 15; ... we worship the holy and stately Sraosha Y. 57, 2. *Vide* Vend. 9, 42; Vend. 10, 17; Y. 10, 3.

616. Transitive verbs expressive of motion may take both the accusative of the direct object and also the accusative of the goal of motion;* e. g., ... when we have brought the fire in (these) houses (Vend. 5, 39). *Vide* Yt. 6, 1.

617. The accusative is used to denote size, quantity, duration and distance, and answers the questions 'how large?' 'how much?' 'how long?' and 'how far?' e. g., ... how large is the house? Twelve Vîtâras in the largest part of the house (Darmes.) Vend. 14, 14; ... how large is the rill? The depth of a dog (Darmes.) Vend. 14, 12.... how long shall the ground lie fallow...? A year long (Vend. 6, 1); ... how far from righteous persons? Three paces...Vend. 3, 17. ... they shall expose it (i. e., the garment) to the air for three months at the window of the house (Vend. 7, 15).

618. In interrogative sentences, the verb generally precedes the

* Compr. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 278.

subject; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 may that woman be allowed to drink water? (Vend. 7, 70); 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 dost Thou bring the water to the corpses? (Vend. 5, 16).

619. But when a sentence begins with an interrogative particle, the subject mostly precedes the verb; e. g., 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 what food shall this woman first eat? (Vend. 5, 50); 𐬀𐬵𐬀𐬌 𐬨𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬨𐬀 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 where shall be the place of that man? (Vend. 3, 15). For further illustration, *vide* Vend. 5, 57; 6, 42; Ys. 8, 5.

In some instances, however, the verb precedes the subject; e. g., 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 when are abundance and prosperity to come back again (to that land)? Vend. 9, 54. *Vide* Vend. 2, 31; 13, 17. 18; 19, 12.

620. Some verbs (verbs of giving, smiting, beseeching, calling, appointing, establishing, considering, making) govern two objective cases; e. g., 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 if a man give bad food to a shepherd's dog (Vend. 13, 20); 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 Vend. 4, 30; 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 (thou) who dost not pray me swiftness in the meeting thick with numbers (Mihr) Y. 11, 2; 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 do not call him a priest...Vend. 18, 1; 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 ...Khrafstras are produced which men call lice (Vend. 17, 3). 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 whom

(i. e., Mithra) the holy Ahura Mazda established as a priest (Yt. 10, 89); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 they consider a year only as a day (Vend. 2, 41); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 which (i. e., the blessing) makes an indigent person affluent (Vend. 22, 5).

621. The indirect object of a transitive verb mostly precedes the direct object; e. g., 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 if a man give bad food to a dog...Vend. 13, 20; 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 who this offering would deny me (Mills) Y. 11, 5. For further illustration, vide Y. 11, 2; Y. 44, 1. 2.

622. The accusative case, used with verbs expressive of going, moving, reaching, falling, rushing, and the like, denotes the goal of motion; * e. g.,...𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 he shall go into the world of evil-doers (Vend. 5, 62); 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 who (i. e., Mithra) goes towards that country (Yt. 10, 112). *Vide* Vend. 4, 52; Yt. 10, 137; Y. 57, 30. Vend. 8, 41-70.

623. Some intransitive verbs (such as 𐬀𐬵𐬌 to become, 𐬀𐬵𐬌, 𐬀𐬵𐬌 to be, 𐬀𐬵𐬌 to walk) and passive verbs (such as to be called) take the same case after them as before them; e. g., 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 Yt. 1, 19. *Vide* Vend. 2, 8.

𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 I am, O Zarathustra! Haoma, the holy and driving death afar (Mills) Y. 9, 2. *Vide* Visp. 11, 13; Vend. 9, 2.

𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 the man who praises him is therewith more victorious (Mills) Y. 10, 6; 𐬀𐬵𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 be thou childless Y. 11, 3.

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 275.

[illegible] that I may walk on (this) earth as a destroyer of malignity and a conqueror of the Demon-of-lie (Y. 9, 29); [illegible] Thy praisers and Mâthra-speakers may we be called O Ahura Mazda! Y. 41, 5; [illegible] (the highest of the lights) which is called the sun Y. 36, 6.

624. (1) The instrumental denotes the instrument or means by which anything is accomplished, *e. g.*, [illegible] by this Word will I strike (thee, O evil-doer Angra Mainyu!) Vend. 19, 9; [illegible] by means of his two arms (Yt. 13, 107); [illegible] by Thy shining flame (Y. 31, 19). For further illustration, vide Y. 9, 29; Y. 29, 6; Y. 31, 19; Y. 33, 2; Yt. 1, 29; Yt. 10, 119; Vend. 2, 18.

625. (2) The instrumental also expresses accompaniment or association with, and is generally used with the particles [illegible] (Gâth. [illegible]), meaning 'with, together with;'* *e. g.*, [illegible] with a cushion (Vend. 14, 14), [illegible] Vend. 6, 27; [illegible] with the victorious wind (Yt. 10, 47); [illegible] together with pasture (Y. 29, 2). *Vide* Y. 32, 1; Y. 38, 1.

626. (3) The instrumental denotes the characteristic mark or the attribute of a person or thing;* *e. g.*, [illegible] the Druj Nasu rushes away in the shape of a stinking fly (Vend. 7, 3). *Vide* Yt. 13, 3.

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 278.

627. (4) The instrumental is, in some instances, used for the ablative, and *vice versâ*; *e.g.*, [illegible] from the house, from the borough (Vend. 10, 5). *Vide* Vend. 10, 2. [illegible] we praise Mithra, the lord of wide pastures, with offerings (Yt. 10, 4). *Vide* Yt. 1, 9; Yt. 5, 8.

628. (1) The dative denotes the person or thing for whom or which the object of an action is intended (the indirect object); the purpose for which an action is performed, or that for which a thing may be used.* *E.g.*, [illegible] you, these do we announce with celebrations and present them to Ahura Mazda (Mills) Y. 4, 2; [illegible].—*Vide* Vend. 5, 57; Y. 26, 4-5; Yt. 16, 19.

629. (2) The dative of any noun denoting an action or state may be used in the place of an infinitive of purpose.† *E.g.* [illegible] to withstand the robbers and bandits (Yt. 6, 4). *Vide* Vend. 6, 6; Visp. 9, 3.

630. (3) The dative is, in several instances, used in the sense of the locative. *E.g.*, [illegible] in the material world (Yt. 13, 4); [illegible] (Geld.) in the land of Bawri (*i.e.*, Babylon) Yt. 5, 29; Y. 9, 4; Yt. 5, 129.

631. (1) "The ablative denotes that from which something else is represented as moving away or being removed; that from which something keeps away, is kept away, or deviates, and the like; the place or source from which something starts or proceeds or is obtained."‡ *E.g.*, ...[illegible] (Wester.)...when a person recites the praise of Ashem when starting from his bed (Yt. 21, 1); [illegible]

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 279.
† Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 279.
‡ Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 280.

three paces from righteous persons (Vend. 3, 17); ... from the region of the north, rushed forth Angra Mainyu (Vend. 19, 1). *Vide* Y. 20, 10; Y. 60, 6; Yt. 8, 23; Yt. 10, 93; Yt. 13, 100; Vend. 5, 15; Vend. 11, 10.

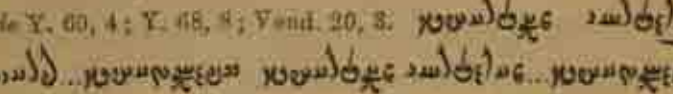
632. (2) With words implying fear of, protection from, the ablative denotes that from which one is afraid, or from which one protects.* *E. g.*, ... (Guid.) that I may never bow through terror (Yt. 9, 4); ... protect the friendly man from the unfriendly foe (Yt. 1, 24).

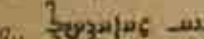
633. (3) The ablative is often used with comparatives and words having a comparative sense. *E. g.*, ... fleeter than (our) horses (Y. 57, 28). *Vide* Vend. 5, 11.

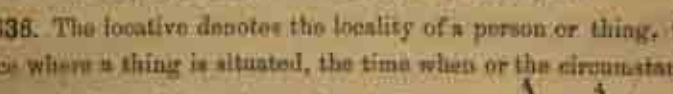
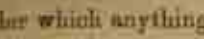
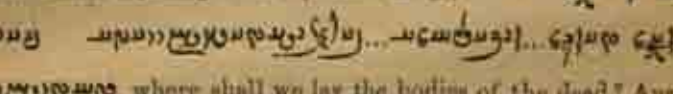
634. (1) The genitive is employed to denote the relation between persons or things expressed by nouns. *E. g.*, ... the malice of Daevas (Yt. 1, 10); ... in the shape of a maiden (Yt. 13, 107); ... the son of Pourushaspa (Yt. 5, 18), &c.

635. (2) "In connection with multiplicatives, the genitive denotes the time in which an action is repeatedly performed." *E. g.*, ... who (*i.e.*, Sraosha) thrice within the day, and three times of a night, will drive on to that Karshvar *Hvaniratha*, called the luminous (Milla) Y. 57, 31.

* Dr. Kielhorn's Sanskrit grammar, 3rd Ed., p. 284.

(3) The genitive is used with certain infinitives, meaning 'to withstand,' 'to arrest,' 'to contradict,' 'to keep in mind,' 'to study,' 'to speak forth,' 'to perform,' and the like. *E. g.*,  to withstand darkness (Yt. 6, 4). *Vide* Y. 60, 4; Y. 68, 8; Vend. 20, 3.  to keep the Holy Word,...to study the Holy Word,...to speak forth the Holy Word (Darmes.) Yt. 1, 31. *Vide* Visp. 15, 1, Yt. 9, 26.

(4) The genitive is, in several instances, used for the locative. *E. g.*,  but I think (thus) in my heart...(Yt. 10, 106);  in the earth (Vend. 3, 36). *Vide* Vend. 19, 3; Y. 32, 3. Vend. 9, 56; Yt. 14, 31.

636. The locative denotes the locality of a person or thing, the place where a thing is situated, the time when or the circumstance under which anything takes place.* *E. g.*,  where shall we lay the bodies of the dead? Ans.—On the highest summits (Vend. 6, 44-45);  O waters! rest within your places...(Mills) Y. 65, 2; *vide* Yt. 13, 11; Vend. 15, 4; Y. 50, 2.  worship me O Zarathushtra, by day and by night (Yt. 1, 9). *Vide* Y. 11, 7; Y. 12, 5; Y. 44, 14.

The locative may be used in the sense of 'among,' 'upon,' 'on,' 'together with' or 'of' with superlatives and words conveying a similar meaning.* *E. g.*,  (Wester.) of all females those are best kept (Darmes.)

* Comp. Dr. Kielhorn's Sans. grammar, 3rd Ed., pp. 228—233

Yt. 14, 12: 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬐𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 among all men and horses (Yt. 15, 53). *Vide* Y. 29, 5.

637. The present tense is used to express, in addition to the present time—

(1) An eternal truth, a natural fact; *e. g.*, 𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌-𐬐𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 O Thou All-knowing Ahura Mazda! Thou art never asleep, never intoxicated, Thou Ahura Mazda! Vend. 19, 29; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 the Garô-nmâna (i. e., the highest paradise) is for the holy souls (Yt. 8, 4). For further illustration, *vide* Yt. 6, 1; Vend. 3, 41; Vend. 1, 4; Y. 65, 4.

(2) A thing we habitually do, or a thing which always takes place; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 I praise righteousness Y. 11, 18; 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 I praise the lands where thou (O Haoma!) dost grow sweet-scented (Y. 10, 4). *Vide* Vend. 5, 16-17; Y. 57, 16; Yt. 17, 7.

(3) An action or circumstance that has already taken place; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 when we have brought the fire in (these) houses (Vend. 5, 39).

(4) A future near at hand; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 ever shalt thou stand at the door of the stranger (Darmes.) Vend. 3, 29.

(5) The present subjunctive; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 if there be a number of men resting in the same place...Vend. 5, 27. *Vide* Yt. 5, 63.

(6) The future perfect; *e. g.*, 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 𐬵𐬀𐬎𐬀𐬌𐬥𐬀𐬌𐬎𐬀𐬌 the Druj Nasa rushes forth upon him, till the dog shall have seen the corpse...Vend. 7, 3.

638. The present subjunctive expresses—

(1) Future time; *e. g.*, [illegible] when will the springs of water as thick as a horse's size flow? Yt. 8, 5; [illegible] the good and holy Sraosha will come to thee for help and joy (Yt. 1, 9). For further illustration, *vide* Yt. 19, 92; Vend. 19, 8.

(2) Benediction; *e. g.*, [illegible] mayest thou be holy like Zarathustra (Yt. 23, 4).

(3) Wish or desire in the mind of the speaker; *e. g.*, [illegible] (Gold,) all the Daêvas may fear and bow in spite of themselves before me, that they may fear and flee down to darkness (Darmes.) Yt. 9, 4. *Vide* Y. 30, 7.

639. (1) The imperfect tense is used to denote some definite past time; *e. g.*, [illegible] in whose birth and growth the waters and the plants rejoiced and grew (Yt. 13, 93). For further illustration, *vide* Y. 29, 1; Yt. 19, 35; Yt. 5, 58; Yt. 8, 38.

(2) The imperfect is used in narratives referring to some remote time; *e. g.*, [illegible] &c.

(3) The imperfect is, in several cases, used instead of the present tense to express the idea of the speaker in a lively and emphatic manner; *e. g.*, [illegible] for now with (mine) eye, I see Him clearly (Mills) Y. 45, 8; [illegible] here I look at the moon; here I perceive the moon (Darmes.) Yt. 7, 2. *Vide* Y. 31, 13; Y. 51, 4; Yt. 13, 2.

(4) The imperfect is used also to express an action habitual or frequently performed; e. g., ... (I desire to approach with my praise those Fravashis) which hold the heaven in its place apart, ... which hold the children in the wombs safely enclosed apart (Mills) Y. 23, 1.

(5) The imperfect is sometimes used to denote an action going on while another took place: e. g., ... when barley is coming forth, the Daêvas start up; when the corn is growing rank, then faint the Daêvas' hearts (Darmes.) Vend. 3, 32. *Vide* Yt. 11, 4-6.

(6) The imperfect is also used to express events that have taken place at, or close to, the time of speaking; e. g., ... he, the ruffian, now fiercely fought against me on horseback (Yt. 5, 30).

(6) In some rare instances the imperfect denotes the pluperfect tense; e. g., ... (Geld.) which (i. e., the Fravashis) show a beautiful growth to the plants, which had stood before for a long time in the same place without growing (Darmes.) Yt. 13, 55.

640. The imperfect subjunctive is mostly used in the Paramatpads, and expresses—

(1) Future time; e. g., ... Asha-Vahista will smite the sickliest of all sicknesses (Darmes.) Yt. 3, 14. *Vide* Y. 44, 15; Yt. 13, 129; Yt. 19, 11.

(2) Contingency of an event: e. g., ...

...and of those people one happens to die (Darmes.) Vend. 5, 27. *Vide* Vend. 16, 8.

(3) Earnest desire on the part of the speaker; *e. g.*, ...who will praise us?...who will meditate upon us? who will bless us? (Darmes.) Yt. 13, 49. *Vide* Khor. Nyâ., 1.

(4) Purpose or consequence; *e. g.*, ...as Ahura Mazda made the creatures many and good, many and fair,...so that they may restore the world (Darmes.) Yt. 19, 10-11.

(5) The beginning of an action; *e. g.*, until the birds begin to fly, the plants to grow (Vend. 5, 12-13).

841. The imperative second person is used to express—

(1) Earnest advice; *e. g.*, (Geld.) thou Frashaostra! go thou (forth) with the generous helpers (Mills) Y. 46, 16; thither carry the seeds of every kind of tree (Vend. 2, 28). *Vide* Vend. 18, 16; Y. 8, 3; Y. 45, 1.

(2) Request, entreaty, invitation, or desire on the part of the speaker; *e. g.*, comes to me for help, O Mazda! Yt. 1, 33. do ye teach me? Y. 29, 1. O ye Yazatas of full glory! give (us) courage and victory (Mih Nyâ., 10);...now hear ye, now listen ye (who have come from near and from afar) Y. 45, 1. *Vide* Vend. 5, 21; Vend. 18, 6; Y. 33, 10; Y. 62, 4; Yt. 5, 22.

(3) Threat; *e. g.*, ... perish, O foolish Druj! rush away, O Druj! Vend. 8, 27.

(4) Benediction or blessing; *e. g.*, ... live thou long, live with felicity (Afrin-Gâhân., para. 18).

(5) Command; *e. g.*, ... (Vend. 10, 2); ... stand thou not near her, sit thou not on her bed (Ibrmm.) Yt. 17, 57. *Vide* Vend. 19, 1.

Note.—The imperative second person singular and plural shares almost all these different meanings with the potential second person singular and plural.*

642. The imperative first person is used to denote—

(1) Future time; *e. g.*, ... I will come to thee for help and joy (Yt. 1, 9). *Vide* Vend. 22, 3; Y. 68, 8.

(2) Wish or desire on the part of the speaker; *e. g.*, ... that we may find a young husband (Yt. 15, 40); ... may we see Thee (Y. 60, 12). *Vide* Yt. 10, 108; Yt. 5, 130; Yt. 9, 26.

(3) Determination or promise; *e. g.*, ... by this Word will I strike, by this Word will I repel thee, O evil-doer Angra Mainyu! (Vend. 19, 9).

(4) Irresolution; *e. g.*, ... what shall I do? shall I go back to the heavens? shall I sink into the earth? Yt. 17, 58. *Vide* Y. 46, 1.

(5) Inquiry; *e. g.*, ... whither shall we bring, where

* Comp. Dr. Kashorn's Sanskrit grammar, 2nd Ed., p. 269.

shall we lay the bodies of the dead? O Ahura Mazda! (Vend. 6, 44).

643. The imperative third person is, in the sense of *let*, generally employed in allowing or giving leave or power to do a thing: *e. g.*, [illegible] (Geld.) and thus let the sinners by these means be foiled (Mills) Y. 53, 8. For further illustration, *vide* Y. 33, 9; Y. 35, 6.

644. The imperative third person also conveys the sense of earnest desire or wish, corresponding to the English auxiliary verb *may*: *e. g.*, [illegible] may these Fravashis come satisfied into this house; may they walk satisfied through this house (Yt. 13, 156). *Vide* Y. 10, 1; Y. 51, 17; Y. 58, 1.

645. In some rare instances, the imperative third person expresses the future time near at hand; *e. g.*, [illegible] O fair Yima, son of Vivanghat! on this sinful corporeal world (severe) winters will shortly fall (Vend. 2, 32).

646. The perfect is used to indicate that an action is done or finished in the past at a certain period; *e. g.*, [illegible] in the reign of Yima, there was neither cold nor heat, nor old age nor death (Y. 9, 5). *Vide* Yt. 13, 67; Y. 1, 21.

The perfect is, in several instances, used to mark the continuity of an action; *e. g.*, [illegible] who (*i. e.*, Ahura Mazda) has been nourishing us (Y. 1, 1). [illegible] the most beautiful whom I have ever seen (Y. 9, 1). *Vide* Yt. 10, 45; Yt. 22, 8, 11; Y. 12, 7; Y. 62, 8; Vend. 5, 7.

647. The Potential second person expresses—

(1) Request; *e. g.*, ... listen to our Yaçna, O Mithra! be thou pleased with our Yaçna, O Mithra! (come and) sit at our Yaçna (Yt. 10, 32).

(2) Command or duty; *e. g.*, ... thou, O Zarathustra! shall stand outside by the furrow (Darmes.) Vend. 9, 12; ... O Zarathustra! keep thou for ever that man who is friendly (to me) from the foe unfriendly (to me)! (Darmes.) Yt. 1, 24. *Vide* Y. 65, 10; Vend. 7, 71.

(3) Benediction or prayer; *e. g.*, ... may'st Thou, O Ahura Mazda! reign at Thy will, and with a saving rule over Thine own creatures (Mills) Y. 8, 5.

649. The Potential first and third persons are generally used to indicate—

(1) Wish or prayer on the part of the speaker; *e. g.*, ... may no one whichsoever get first sight of us. In the strife with such may we be they who get the first alarm (Mills) Y. 9, 21; ... Oh! may we never fall across the rush of the angry lord, *i. e.*, Mithra (Darmes.) Yt. 10, 69; ... by whose force we may smite the Lie-demon (Mills) Y. 31, 4. *Vide* Y. 60, 2.

(2) Necessary observation of certain duties, rites or precepts of religion, *e. g.*, ...

[illegible] let them wash their bodies three days and three nights (Yt. 10, 122);...[illegible]...[illegible] Vend. 5, 51. *Vide* Vend. 16, 2.

649. The aorist is generally used in the Gâthâ dialect; its forms in the Avestan texts are occasionally met with. In several instances the imperfect and the aorist are used indiscriminately without any apparent distinction. The aorist is employed to express—

(1) Indefinite past time; *e. g.*, [illegible] As Thou, O Ahura Mazda! hast thought and spoken, as Thou hast determined and hast done these things (affecting) what is good...(Mills) Y. 30, 4.

(2) Definite past time; *e. g.*, [illegible] then Yima said to himself, "How shall I make that Vara"...Vend. 2, 31. *Vide* Y. 51, 12.

(3) Present time; *e. g.*, [illegible] here I give to you, O ye Bountiful Immortals! Yaçna and homnage (Mills) Y. 11, 18.

(4) Future time; *e. g.*, [illegible] when shall the righteous man, O Mazda! smite the evil-doer? Y. 48, 2. *Vide* Y. 34, 3; Y. 48, 7.

650 The Avesta language does not admit of the indirect form of speech. The direct construction, in the narrative form, is resorted to; *e. g.*, [illegible] Ahura Mazda spake unto Spitama Zarathustra, saying....when I, Ahura Mazda, made this mansion, it beautiful...(Vend. 22, 1); [illegible]

then Yima replied to me, 'I will make thy regions thrive'...(Vend. 2, 5). *Vide* Vend. 15, 11-14; Vend. 19, 5-9; Yt. 5, 91-93; Yt. 17, 54-56.

651. As a general rule, prepositions precede nouns and pronouns which they govern; *e. g.*, to the creation of Mazda (Yt. 9, 9). from Gayomarti to the victorious Saoshyant (Y. 26, 10); on this ground (Vend. 8, 10).

652. When a noun is qualified by an adjective or a numeral, the preposition mostly intervenes between the two; *e. g.*, on the *highest* summits (Vend. 6, 45); with his club uplifted (against the Druj) Vend. 18, 30; for ten nights (Yt. 13, 49). *Vide* Y. 65, 5; Yt. 14, 31; Vend. 9, 56.

BOMBAY: PRINTED AT THE EDUCATION SOCIETY'S PRESS, BYCULLA.